CHAPTER IV
RESULTS
4.1. ENUMERATION OF ETHNOBOTANICAL PLANTS

The Ethnobotanically important 328 plants species used by the Kabui and the Monsang Naga tribes in the present study are enumerated with their citation, vernacular name, distribution, habitat, description, flowering and fruiting periods, part used and ethnobotanical uses in alphabetical order and vernacular name of the Kabui is represented by 'K' and the Monsang by 'M'. Enumeration of plant species are as follows.


**Vern. Name:** Bhelandri (K), Shamnar (M)

**Distribution:** All over India & tropical courtries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial & cultivated.

   It is an annual, shrub; it is about 1-2.5 m high, leaves polymorphic, palmate, 5-7 lobed, flowers yellow with purple centre, axillary cyme and capsule fruit.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-November

**Specimen examined:** Muktina. 13.11.2011. Roma-1389. (Plate-5-A).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

   A glass of leaf decoction after lunch for a week is recommended for indigestion and one month for pneumonia and bronchitis in both the tribes.

**Food:**

   Fruits are taken as vegetable.

**Established report:** Fruits are taken as vegetable. Bark is used as a source of fibres. Devi et al., 2012.

**Vern. Name:** *Chaning* (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial & wild.

Small tree; leaves paripinnate, 10-20 opposite leaflet pairs, oblong ovate, minutely apiculate, flowers reddish, clustered on tubercle in dense pedunculate, racems; fruit- pod.

**Fls. & Frts.:** July-February

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 12.8.2010. Roma-1244.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Root & fruit

**Medicinal uses:**

One spoon of root juice with a spoon of honey is given thrice daily for a week to cure cough in adults and five drops twice a day for five days in children.

**Hair lotion:**

Fruit is used as hair lotion for baldness, dandruff and hair fall.

**Ornamental:**

Seeds are used to make garland.

**Established report:** Root paste is given to control leucorrhoea of women and leucoderma. Bark is astringent and diuretic (Sinha, 1996; John, 2001).


**Vern. Name:** *Kangon* (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over India, Malaysia & China.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild common in bushy areas.

Stout prickly climber, leaves bipinnate, main rachis bears sharp hooked prickles and large gland on the petiole; flowers small in globose head; fruits pod.

**Fls. & Frts.:** February-August

**Specimen examined:** Japhou. 5.1.2009. Roma-707.
Ethnobotanical uses:

**Parts used:** Fruits and leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

Paste of pods is applied on burn twice a day for 10 days.

**Hair lotion:**

Leaves and pods are used as hair lotion.

**Established report:** It is used in leucoderma, eczema, burning and in making cosmetics, shampoo, soap, detergent, antioxidant etc.


**Vern. Name:** Khuchum pere (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Asian Countries & Tropical Africa.

Herb with pubescent branches; leaves opposite variable, elliptic-ovate or sub-orbicular, softly adpressed hairy; flowers greenish stiffly deflexed in simple or or panicled pubescent spike.

**Fls. & Frts.:** September-March

**Specimen examined:** Langthabal Khoupum. 26.10.2009. Roma-788.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Root

**Medicinal uses:**

1. About 5 g of root powder mixed with a half glass of luke warm water is given once a day for 10 days in pregnant women for easy delivery.

2. About 5 g of root powder mixed with a glass of luke warm water is given thrice a day to treat dysentery till the motion is controlled.

**Established report:** It is pungent, purgative, diuretic, emetic, astringent and used in coli, dropsy, piles, boils and skin eruptions. Seeds are used in hydrophobia, bleeding pile, cholera, cold, cough, toothache, stomachache, wounds and stomach enlargement (Sinha, 1996; Das *et al.*, 2010).

**Vern. Name:** *Bhingaraj* (K), *Pophe* (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & Asian countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in marshy areas.

- Herb; leaves opposite, ovate elliptic, narrowed at base, obtuse or acute at apex, distantly serrate; flowers yellow, solitary or in long terminal panicles; fruits achens.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-December

**Specimen examined:** Tupul. 20.2.2011. Roma-1309. (Plate-5-B).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Shoots, flowers & leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

1. About 2-5 fresh shoots are taken every day to control hypertension.
2. Flowering shoots are chewed once a day for a week to relieve toothache.
3. A spoon of leaf juice with a spoon of honey is given to expel intestinal worm twice a day for 3 days.

**Fodder:** Shoots are used as fodder.

**Established report:** Shoots are used in toothache. Crushed plants are used as fish poison and used as fodder (Sinha, 1996; Devi *et al.*, 2011).


**Vern. Name:** *Ok-hidak* (K & M)

**Distribution:** India, Tropical countries & Europe.

**Habitat:** Aquatic and found in swampy areas.

- Perennial herb in marshy areas with creeping, aromatic rhizome; leaves linear, glossy bright green, acute, amplexicaul base, sheathing; flowers pale green, sessile in cylindrical stumpy spadix; fruits berry, seeds globose.

**Fls. & Frts.:** Rare

**Specimen examined:** Keikhu. 18.12.2011. Roma-1423. (Plate-5-C).
Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Rhizome

Medicinal uses:

1. A spoon of rhizome juice with a spoon of honey is given once a day for 5 days to expel intestinal worm and to treat fever in children.
2. A piece of dried rhizome is tied by black threat at neck of children for defence from worms and insects.
3. Paste of rhizome is applied on head to relieve from headache.

Established report: It is used in various diseases like chronic diarrhoea, dysentery, intermittent fever, glandular and abdominal tumours, liver and kidney ailment, rheumatism and eczema etc. Rhizomes are used for its antibacterial properties (Sinha, 1996; Devi et al., 2011a)


Vern. Name: Laichangrang (K), Moyum-pambi (M)

Distribution: Warmer parts of the world like India, Europe, Africa, America, Australia, Malaya & China.

Habitat: Common in bushy areas.

Rhizome erect, short; scales elongated, glabrous, entire, acuminate, brown; strips long, naked, scaly at base; fronds caespitose, rooting at base; viens distinct on both surfaces; sori transversely elongated, crescent shaped arranged along the edge of the lobes, brownish in colour.

Fertile period: August- April


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves

Medicinal uses:

About 20-50 ml of leaf extract mixed with a half glass of luke warm water is given in fever, blood diseases and epilepsy.

Established report: Leaves have antimicrobial activity. Paste of leaves is applied on cuts and wounds. It is used in cough, asthma, fever, leprosy and hair falling (John, 2000).

**Vern. Name:** Heikhagokthai (K), Heikhagok (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Tropical Asia & Africa.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild

Wild, tree with spine; leaves alternate, trifoliate, palmate, leaflets elliptic or ovate-lanceolate, subcrenulate or entire, sessile; flower white in lateral and subterminal panicles appearing with the leaves, petals 4-5, embricate with fleshy glands, stamens many; fruit globose, yellowish brown with hard rind, chambered with many seeds.

**Fls. & Frts.:** March-August

**Specimen examined:** Chingmeirong. 6.11.2009. Roma-794.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits and leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

1. About 100 ml of fruit juice with a glass of luke warm water and a spoon of honey is given twice a day for one week to cure constipation.
2. About 50 ml of fruit juice with a half glass of luke warm water and a spoon of honey is given to treat stomachache and dysentery.
3. 50 ml of juice of leaves with a spoon of honey and with a pinch of black pepper powder is given to cold and caugh twice a day for five days.
4. Seed paste is applied on boils.

**Established report:** Fruit is aromatic, cooling, laxative, astungent, stomach and digestive. Root bark is used to intermittent fever and also as fish poison. Leaf juice is used in diabetes. Seeds are used to colitis (Devi *et al*., 2011a).


**Vern. Name:** Waithopu (K), Kohle (M)

**Distribution:** All over world.
**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in wasteland areas.

Annual herb; leaves opposite, sometime upper leaves alternate, ovate or rhomboid-ovate, petiole crenate, base cuneate, more or less hairy on both surface; flowers white or bluish purple in heads; fruits achene, pappus.

**Fls. & Frts.:** Throughout year

**Specimen examined:** Keikhu. 8.3.2011. Roma-1201. (Plate-5-D).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves and shoots

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Paste of leaves is applied to cuts and wounds.
2. Warmed leaves are applied on boil.

**Hair lotion:**

Shoots and leaves are used as hair lotion for its fragrance and strengthen of hairs.

**Established report:** Decoction or infusion of plants is used in diarrhoea, dysentery, colic with flatulence and other gastrointestinal ailments. Leaf juice is styptic applied to cuts and sores. Leaves are also used in boil, leprosy and skin diseases. Paste of leaves is applied locally on cuts and wounds by Nishi tribe (Das, 2006 & Devi et al., 2011a).


**Vern. Name:** Tilhou macha (K), Shou-dii (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Nagaland & Central Asia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Annual herb, stem is modified into small bulb consisting reduced stem apex, surrounded by numerous fleshy, pinkish scale leaves which serve as food storage organ, leaves fistular, flower greenish white; fruits capsule.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-March

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 17.7.2010. Roma-1225. (Plate-6-A).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plant
**Medicinal uses:**

1. Juice of 5-10 bulbs with a half glass of water is given twice a day to check dysentery till the motion stop.
2. Scale leaves of bulb are slightly warmed and applied on the boil.
3. Juice of bulb is applied over head to check hair fall.

**Spices:**

Bulbs and leaves are used as spices.

**Established report:** Bulbs are given to treat toothache and whole plant is used as spices (Devi et al., 2011a).


**Vern. Name:** Tilhou (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Annual herb, stem is modified bulb consisting reduced stem apex, surrounded by numerous fleshy, pinkish scale leaves which serve as food storage organ, leaves fistular, flower greenish white; fruits capsule.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-March

**Specimen examined:** Bolongdai. 20.2.2011. Roma-1306. (Plate-6-B).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plant

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Taking of raw bulbs at the time of meals prevents teeth infection and indigestion.
2. One glass of bulb decoction is given to check diarrhoea and dysentery. It is repeated frequently till the motion is controlled.
3. It is also given to check cholera.
4. The paste of bulb is applied on boils and juice of bulb is applied over forehead to check hair fall.

**Spices:**

Leaves and bulbs are used as condiments and spices.
**Established report:** Bulbs are diuretic, expectorant, aphrodisiac and stimulant, freshly cut bulbs are used internally in insect bite (Singh *et al*., 2002).


**Vern. Name:** Cholang (K & M)

**Distribution:** Hill districts of Manipur, Nagaland & Nepal.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated

Annual herb, stem is modified bulb consisting reduced stem apex, surrounded by numerous fleshy, white scale leaves which serve as food storage organ, leaves fistular, glabrous; flower pinkish white; fruits capsule.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-March

**Specimen examined:** Noney. 30.5.2010. Roma-1217. (Plate-6-C).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plant

**Medicinal uses:**

Bulbs (1-3) are taken every day, it stimulates nervous systems.

**Spices:**

Leaves and bulbs are used as spices and condiments, eaten as raw, salad, ametpa and ironba.

**Established report:** In Japan it is used as tonic to help in intestine. It is traditional medicine to treat heart diseases (Sumitra *et al*., 2009).


**Vern. Name:** Napakpi (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Northeastern states of India & China.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated in homegardens.

Perennial herb, base of stem clothed with long narrow membranous sheath; leaves slender, leaf basals linear, membranous shorter than the tall sub-trigonous scape; flowers in globose head, long many flowers, spathe with a long tail, pedicels much longer than the stellate while flowering, perianth linear acuminate, filaments inserted on thin bases; fruits capsule.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-December

Ethnobotanical uses:
Parts used: Whole plant

Medicinal uses:
Leaves (3-5) are taken as fresh or cooked to control hypertension and used as blood purifier.

Spices:
Whole plants are used as spices.

Established report: Bulbs are used as spices and vegetable. Leaves are used as medicine for cough, cold, vomiting and in rituals (Bhuyan et al., 2001).

Vern. Name: Gannam (K), Chanam (M)
Distribution: Whole India & tropical Asia.
Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated.
Erect bulbous herb; leaf blades linear base forming pseudo stem flower pinkish; fruit small loculicidal capsule.

Fls. & Frts: February-May
Specimen examined: Heibunglok. 10.7.2010. Roma-1224. (Plate-6-F).

Ethnobotanical uses:
Parts used: Whole plant

Medicinal uses:
1. About 2-4 raw bulbs are taken every day, prescribed to control hypertension and cholesterol.
2. Paste of bulbs is applied on boils externally.
3. Paste of bulbs is heated with mustard oil for massage in rheumatism.

Veterinary:
The paste of bulbs is applied on bone fractures of chiken and dog.

Spices:
Leaves and bulbs are used as spices and condiments as raw or cooked.
Established report: Bulbs are aphrodisiac, stimulant in cough and cold, fever and febrifuge. Bulb juice is used as ear drop, tonic in dyspepsia, skin diseases etc. (Devi et al., 2011a).


**Vern. Name:** *Kachaganam* (K), *Athuwdi* (M)

**Distribution:** Northeastern India & Thailand.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Perennial herb with jointed root stock; leaves many linear, glabrous, entire, dark green in colour; flowers many in globose head, spathe with a long tail, pedicels much longer than the stellate while flowering, perianth linear acuminate, filaments inserted on thin bases; fruits capsule.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-October

**Specimen examined:** Keithelmanbi. 26.8 2010. Roma-1254. (Plate-6-E).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plant

**Medicinal uses:**

Leaves (50-100 g) are eaten fresh or cooked every day to cure kidney stone and urinary troubles.

**Spices:**

Whole plant is used as spices.

**Food:**

Leaves are taken as vegetable.

Established report: Leaves are given to urinary trouble and used as spices (Devi et al., 2001a).


**Vern. Name:** *Hongoo* (K), *Bethung* (M)

**Distribution:** All over India, Myanmar, Thailand, Indonesia & Java.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in wastelands and domesticated.
Herb with long rhizoidal stem; leaves broadly ovate, sagittate repand, basal lobes rounded, connate, peduncle short, tubes of spathe half as long as the coriceous incurved, cymbiform, cupidate limb; flower in spadix as long as the spathe, ovary completely 4-celled, stigma subsessile, disciform entire.

**Fls. & Frts.:** August-December

**Specimen examined:** Keihku. 18.12.2011. Roma-1423. (Plate-5-E).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves and petiole

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Paste of petiole is used in insect bite.
2. Paste of tender leaves with a little amount of common salt is applied on joint pains to relieve pain.

**Food:**

Petioles are used in the preparation of traditional fermented dish called Hentak.

**Established report:** Juice of root is used for treating scorpion and nettle stings. Root and leaves are used as rubifacient for joint pains (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** Kanghoo (K), Behrii (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Cylon & Arabs.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

Herb with long rhizoidal stem; leaves broadly ovate, sagittate repand, basal lobes rounded, connate, peduncle short, tubes of spathe half as long as the coriceous incurved, cymbiform, cupidate limb; flower in spadix as long as the spathe, ovary completely 4-celled, stigma subsessile, disciform entire.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-September

**Specimen examined:** Keithelmanbi. 2.11.2009. Roma-791. (Plate-7-B).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Rhizome
**Medicinal uses:**

1. Ten ml of fresh rhizome juice with a spoon of honey is given twice a day for a week to cure mouth infection, stomachache, rheumatism, fever and to expel intestinal worm.

2. One glass of luke warm water with 50 ml of rhizome extract and spoon of honey is given once a day for one month to cure leucoderma.

**Spices:**

Rhizomes are used as spices and vegetable.

**Established report:** It is used as spices and to treat skin diseases and intestinal disorder (Khare, 2004).


**Vern. Name:** *Pulei* (K), *Polei* (M)

**Distribution:** All over the North-East states, Maharashtra, Tamilnadu, Srilanka, Indonesia, China & Malaysia.

**Habitat:** Common in swampy areas.

- Wild rhizomatous herb, leaves alternate, lanceolate to linear oblong with sheathing stalk, large glabrous, flowers bracteate greenish white in spike.

**Fls. & Frts.:** May-October.

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 8.7.2011. Roma-1342. (Plate-7-A).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Rhizome

**Spices:**

- Rhizomes and young leaf-petioles are used as spices.

**Food:**

- Rhizomes are taken as vegetable.

**Established report:** Tubers possess carminative aphrodisiae, stomachi and stimulant properties. It is also used as flavouring agent and spices. Rhizome is used in fever, rheumatism, bronchial catarrhal, gout, colic and asthma (Devi et al., 2011b).

**Vern. Name:** *Puleimanbi* (K & M)

**Distribution:** North-eastern India and tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and cultivated.

Perennial herb with long rhizome; leaves alternate, long, narrowly lanceolate, smooth and shining; flowers sessile in terminal spike or raceme.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-September

**Specimen examined:** Japhou. 28.8.2010. Roma-1255.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Rhizome

**Medicinal uses:**

1. About 15 ml of rhizome juice with a half glass of water and two spoon of honey is given once a day for a week to cure cough and rheumatism.

2. Chewing of a piece of rhizome prevent bad breath

**Spices:**

Rhizome is used as spices.

**Established report:** Juice of rhizome is used in cough, tonsillitis, throat infection etc. (Sinha, 1996).

---


**Vern. Name:** *Laikhut* (K), *Daangkheing* (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur and tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Wild, tree with whorled leaves; flowers in panicked umbellate cymes; fruits two slender follicles, style filiform, seeds comose, disc, various or absent.

**Fls. & Frts.:** August-June

**Specimen examined:** Noney. 1.12.2011. Roma-1416.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Bark & Leaves
**Medicinal uses:**

1. A glass of decoction of bark is given twice a day a week to cure, diarrhoea, dysentery, malaria and fever. It is given for one month at the same doses for treating jaundice.

2. Juice of leaves is applied in skin diseases.

**Established report:** Bark is bitter, tonic used in the treatment of malaria. Latex is antiseptic used in dysentery. Latex is also applied to sore, ulcer, tumors and rheumatic swellings. Root and bark extract is used in asthma, diarrhoea and cardiac trouble and as haemostatic. Milky latex is applied in sore (Sinha, 1996 & Devi et al., 2011a).


**Vern. Name:** Kabo-napi (K), Awa-acthour (M)

**Distribution:** All over the tropical & sud-tropical regions of the world.

**Habitat:** Wild, common in wastlands and marshy areas.

- Wild perennial herb, ascending from a creeping or floating, rooting base, stem fistular; leaves opposite, oblong or obovate-oblung; flowers polygamous in head terminals, sessile, white, pseudo-staminoides about as long as stamens.

**Fls. & Frts.:** April-August

**Spesimen examined:** Japhou. 24.9.2009. Roma-782. (Plate-7-C).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Shoots

**Food:**

- Shoots are taken as vegetable.

**Fodder:** Leaves and shoots are used as fodder.

**Established report:** Shoot extract is given to dysentery; boiled extract is taken orally once a day to cure urinary trouble and diarrhea (Sinha, 1996).

**Vern. Name:** Phakchet (K & M)

**Distribution:** Manipur, Northeastern states of India & Warmer countries of the world

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Wild perennial herb with tap root; leaves opposite, simple, variable; flowers minute in spike often few and distinct on the panicle forming a dense panicle.

**Fls. & Frts.:** April-August

**Specimen examined:** Khoupum. 3.5.2011. Roma-1330.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Shoots

**Medicinal uses:**

Shoots are given as curry for 10 days in urinary trouble.

**Food:**

Shoots are eaten as vegetable.

**Established report:** Shoots are given in dysentery, urinary trouble and diarrhoea. Shoots are used as vegetable (Devi *et al.*, 2011b).


**Vern. Name:** Waibopu (K), Chengkrup (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Annual, herb, glabrous; leaves ovate, rhomboid-ovate or rhomboid; flowers minute in spike often few and distinct on the panicle forming a dense inflorescence.

**Fls. & Frts.:** Throughout year

**Specimen examined:** Chingmeirong. 15.8.2009. Roma-774.
Ethnobotanical uses:

**Parts used:** Leaves and young shoots

**Food:** Leaves and young shoots are used as vegetable

**Established report:** Leaves are used as cooling in snake-bite shoots are taken as vegetable (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** Kihom (K), Khomathii (M)

**Distribution:** All over India, Bangladesh, Nepal, Myanmar & China.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

- Cultivated, erect herb, stem short; leave rosete, linear with prickly margins; fruits with rough surface having a crown of small leaves.

**Fls. & Frts.:** April-September

**Specimen examined.** Tousang. 25.7.2011. Roma-1347.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Tendet leaves & fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

1. A spoon of juice of tender leaves is given to empty stomach once a day for 5 days to expel intestinal worms.
2. 100 ml of fruit juice with a half glass of water and a spoon of sugar is given after meals for five days to cure dysentery.
3. A half glass of unripe fruit with powder of ten *Piper nigrum* is given in empty stomach once a day for 3 days as abortifacient.

**Food:**

- Fruits are used as fresh fruie and used to make local wine.

**Established report:** Unripe fruits are abortifacient, juice of the fruit is antiscorbutic. Leaf juice is anthelmintic (Devi *et al.*, 2011a).

**Vern. Name:** *Vubati* (K & M)

**Distribution:** Manipur, Tropical & subtropical world.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Annual herb, branched, petiole short, glabrous, elliptic to lanceolate, acute at both base and apex; flowers small, white with purple blotches at terminal and axillary racemes; fruits capsule, linear-oblong.

**Fls. & Frts.:** August-February

**Specimen examined:** Chingmeirong. 5.8.2010. Roma-1238.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

10-15 ml of decoction of leaves (5-7) is given twice a day for 10 days to cure asthma, chromatic diseases, fever, bronchitis, intestinal worms, cough, stomachae, dysentery and 5-10 ml once a day for 3 months diabetes, pile, jaundice. cholera.

**Established report:** Leaves are used in fever, liver troubles, diabetes, dysentery, cholera, influenza, pile, jaundice, itches etc.; roots are used in stomach trouble (Sinha, 1996; Devi *et al*., 2011a).


**Vern. Name:** *Thoiding amuba* (K), *Lhimpi* (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, tropical & sub-tropical region of the country, China, Malaysia & Sri-Lanka.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated in jhum fields.

Annual herb with quadrangular, softly pubescent stem; leaves rather thick, broadly ovate, base rounded or subcordate, acute, margin crenate serrate, hairy to softly pubescent on both sides, petiole densely hairy; flowers in dense whorls below the leaf axils with linear, clothed, hairy bracts, purple or dark red
with deep blue centre; fruits nutlets, ovoid with smooth, polished, turning black when ripe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-March

**Specimen examined:** Irang. 20.10.2011. Roma-1397.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves and seeds

**Medicinal uses:**

A piece of cotton is boiled with seed oil (30-50 ml) till the oil dried. After cooling the cotton is applied on cuts.

**Hair lotion:**

Leaves are used as hair lotion.

**Hair oil:**

Seed oil is used as hair oil.

**Food:**

Seeds are used to make many items of food.

**Established report:** It is used to treat gastric, catarct, fever, typhoid etc. (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** Ching-yensil (K), Ttittie (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Sikkim, Orissa, Nepal & Myanmar.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild common in foot hills and road sides.

Deciduous shrub, branching, young parts rusty pubescent; leaves long turning deep red before falling, oblong to lanceolate, acute or acuminate, entire, glabrous and glossy above, rusty pubescent along with the midrib; flowers dioecious, pedicelled, minute in terminal and lateral raceme, male flowers- calyx more deeply lobed than in the males, disc annular; fruits small, ovoid purplish red when ripe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-November

**Specimen examined:** Tamei. 15.3.2010. Roma-1202. (Plate-7-D).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves and fruits
Medicinal uses:

Taking of leaves as curry is prescribed for 5 days to treat dysentery, indigestion and stomach pain.

Food:

Leaves are used as vegetable.

*Fruits are edible as fresh fruit.

Established report: Decoction of leaves is given in bile complaints by the tribes of Orissa (Sinha, 1996; Devi et al., 2011a & Devi et al., 2011b).

*New uses in Ethnobotany


Vern. Name: *Heiyen* (K & M)


Habitat: Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

Evergreen small tree; leaves elliptic-oblong, lanceolate, obovate or oblanceolate, glabrous shining above, acute or acuminate; flowers dioecious, greenish-white in simple or racemose pubescent spike; fruits globose, deep red when mature.

Fls. & frts.: June-December


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Fruits & tender shoots

Food:

*Tender shoots are taken as vegetable.

Fruits are used as fresh fruit.

Established report: Stem and root bark are poisonous. Paste of leaves is used to snake bite. Fruits are taken as fresh fruit (Sinha, 1996 & Devi, 2012).

*New uses in ethnobotany.

**Vern. Name:** *Koudrangol* (K), *Kotaangko* (M)

**Distribution:** Paddy fields of Manipur, Asia, Africa & Australia.

**Habitat:** Aquatic and found in swampy area.

Aquatic, annual, herb; leaves erect, oblong with sheathed base; flowers, young spikes enclosed in conical deciduous sheath; fruits follicle.

**Fls. & Fts.:** August-December

**Specimen examined:** Langthabal Khoupum. 19.9.2011. Roma-1375. (Plate-7-F).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves, flowers and fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

*Juice of leaves is applied twice a day for 10 days to treat different kinds of skin diseases.*

**Dood:**

Leaves, flowers and fruits are used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Leaves and flower are consumed as vegetable.

*New report in ethnomedicine.*


**Vern. Name:** *Leibak-hawai* (K), *Lothijiangbi* (M)

**Distribution:** Manipur, Throughout India & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Annual profusely branching, herb, slightly hairy; leaves of two pairs of leaflets, ovate or obovate, adnate to the base of the petiole; flower solitary or few in the axile yellow; fruit pod.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-March

**Specimen examined:** Langthabal Khoupum. 26.4.2009. Roma-732.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Seeds

**Food:**

Seeds are used as side dishes.
Established report: Leaves and seed cake are used as fodder. Seed oil is used as cooking oil (Sinha, 1996).


Vern. Name: *Uthum* (K), *Khuwhmuw* (M)

Distribution: All over Manipur, Assam, Meghalaya & Bangladesh.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild in fores and foot hills.

Small tree branched; leaves chartaceous, oblong-lanceolate, acute or shortly acuminate with cuneate base; flowers greenish white in raceme; fruits drup, globose.

Fls. & Frts.: March-August


Ethnobotanical uses:
Parts used: Tender shoots

Medicinal uses:

Decoction (50-100 ml) of root is given twice a day for 5 days to treat diarrhoea and rheumatism.

Food:

Tender shoots are eaten as vegetable.

Established report: Leaf juice is used in stomach trouble; crushed bark is applied on burns; Young leaves are edible (Sinha, 1996 & Devi *et al.*, 2011b).


Vern. Name: *Khomthokpi* (K & M)

Distribution: Throughout India & Tropical countries.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild in wastelands.

Wild annual, prickly herb with yellowish juice and sinuate pinnatifid, semi-anplexicaul prickly leaves; flowers terminal bright yellow showy; fruits capsule oblong, prickly by short valved alternating with the stigma.
**Fls. & Frts.:** April-October

**Specimen examined:** Keithelmanbi. 16.8.2009. Roma-1249.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

Paste of leaves is applied in toothache.

**Established report:** Leaf juice, seed oil and root extract is applied on skin diseases and skin ulcers. Juice of plants is used externally to treat dropsy, jaundice, skin ulcers, boils and eczema. Root decoction is given to cure cough (Devi *et al*., 2011a).


**Vern. Name:** *Laibakngou* (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over India, Nepal, Myanmar, Bhutan, Japan & Afghanistan.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in foot hills.

Herb or undershrub, glabrous; leaves sessile, alternate, linear-cuneate, acute; flowers light yellow in capitulum peduncled of terminal or axillary racemes; fruits achenes.

**Fls. and Frts.:** August-December

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 17.10.2010. Roma-1280.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Young leaves and tender

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Shoots (1-3) are given once a day for 10 days as medicine in cough, fever, nose watering, stomach trouble for one month in piles.
2. Decoction of leaves is used as insecticide and antibiotic.

**Hair lotion:**

Leaves are used in hair lotion.
Food:

Young leaves and shoots are taken as vegetable.

Established report: Plant juice is used in mouth sores, chronic skin diseases, dysentery and stomachache. This plant is used for its anti-viral properties (Sinha, 1996 & Devi et al., 2011a & b).


Vern. Name: Theibong (K), Theipong (M)

Distribution: Throughout India and Tropical and sub-tropical countries of the world.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild and cultivated.

Evergreen tree with large dense crown, young shoots with stiff hairs; leaves elliptic, obovate, entire, shortly acuminate, coriaceous, glabrous, dark green and glossy above, pale and rough beneath, base narrowed into the petiole; stipules sheathing, prominent, leaving annular, scars on the branchlets; flowers head in bud enclosed in large leathery deciduous stipulate sheaths, male receptacles cylindric sepals 2, syncarp covered with pointed tubercles handing on short stalks; seeds oblong.

Fls. & Frts.: February-October

Specimen examined: Irang. 15.6.2010. Roma-1219.

Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Young shoots & fruits

Medicinal uses:

1. Paste of young leaves is applied on skin for 5-10 min to cure skin diseases and used as antidote in snake bite.
2. 20 ml of root decoction is given twice a day for 5 days to cure diarrhoea.
3. Unripen fruits are used as astringent.
4. Paste of leaves is applied on swelling.

Food:

Young shoots and fruits are used as green vegetable.

Ripen fruits are eaten as fruit.
Established report: Fresh seeds are taken orally against diarrhea; powder of dried young leaves is applied externally to treat tumor; paste of leaves is used as antidote in snake-bite. Roots are used in diarrhoea Young fruits are taken as vegetable and ripen fruits are used as fresh fruit (Devi et al., 2011a & b).


Vern. Name: *Heirukoktong* (K), *Sheerpho* (M)

Distribution: Throughout India, tropical and sub-tropical countries.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

Large deciduous tree with spreading crown; leaves alternate, scabrid, elliptic-ovate or oblong, stipule amplexicaul, apex obtuse; flowers monoecious densely crowded on globose axillary, short peduncle heads; fruits subglobose, shallowly lobed, smooth, velvety, yellow when ripe.

Fls. & Frts.: January-August


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Bark & Fruits

Medicinal uses:

50 ml of bark decoction is given twice a day for 5 days to treat diarrhoea.

Food:

Fruits are used as fresh fruit.

Established report: Latex is used as purgative; it is applied on pimple and as cure of cracked skins. Dried green fruits are given to treat spleen complains. Ripen fruits are used as fresh fruit (John, 2001 & Khare, 2004).


Vern. Name: *Yengtou* (K), *Berier* (M)

Distribution: Throughout India, Tropical Asia and Mediterranean regions

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild and cultivated

Perennial with an erect culm and creeping rhizome, stem fistular; leaves ensiform; flowers in panicles, thyrsiform spikelets small hairy with awns.
Fls. & Frts.: October-June

Specimen examined: Tamenglong. 27.5.2010. Roma-1214.

Ethnobotanical uses:
Parts used: Whole plants

Medicinal uses:
1. One glass of decoction tender shoots mixed with a spoon of honey is given twice a day for 3 months to cure diabetes.
2. Leaf paste is applied on snake bite and cuts.

Household materials:
Stem is used to make mats, furniture and other household materials.

Fodder:
Young leaves are used as fodder.

Established: Root decoction is useful for scanty menstruation. Rhizome decoction with a little amount of common salt is given to cattle dysentery (Khare, 2004).


Vern. Name: *Krishna-chura* (K & M)

Distribution: Throughout India, Tropical America.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild.

Erect perennial herb with woody stem; leaves opposite, lanceolate or oblong-lanceolate, acute at base and apex, glabrous, petiole very short; flowers orange-red, shortly peduncled in umbel-like cymes; fruits follicle.

Fls. & Frts.: May-October


Ethnobotanical uses:
Parts used: Leaves

Medicinal uses:
1. Latex of petiole is applied for 1 month to remove corn.
2. Paste of whole plant is applied in snake bite.
Established report: Juice of leaves is used as antidysentery; root is used as a remedy for piles, root powder is used against skin cancer; whole plant is used to treat epilepsy, cough, leprosy, mental disorder etc. (Devi et al., 2011a).


**Vern. Name:** Nungarei (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over India, Africa, Australia, Malaysia, Myanmar, Nepal.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated in dardens.

Straggling or scandent spinuos climber; leaves modified into linear leaf-like cladode; flowers white or red in racemes; fruits globose.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-March

**Specimen examined:** Keikhu. 18.12.2011. Roma-1424.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves and root

**Medicinal uses:**

1. 50 ml of decoction of leaves is given twice a day for 2-3 months to treat kidney stone.

2. 10-15 ml of root decoction is used twice a day for 1 month in leucorrhoea and impotency.

Established report: Root extract is taken as nerve tonic and used in sexual hormone deficiency. Decoction of root is used in dysentery (Pal & Jain, 1998).


**Vern. Name:** Heinoujom (K), Henochom (M)

**Distribution:** All over India, Native to Indonesia & found in Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and domesticated

Tree with dense crown; leaves ext stipulate, imparipinnate with a terminal leaflet, leaflets 7-11, sub-opposite, stout, pubescent; flowers pink, axillary, variegated, panicked in cyme, pentam erous, polymerous; fruits yellow when ripe with 5-ridges.
**Fls. & Frts.:** July-February


**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits nd leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

1. 30-50 ml of leaf decoction is given twice a day for 5 days to prevent vomiting.
2. Fruit juice is applied on annus to treat bleeding piles.

**Food:**

Fruits are eaten as curry and fruit.

**Established report:** Fruits are used as remedy for jaundice. Fever, chest complains and bleeding piles (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** Neem (K & M)

**Distribution:** Native to India distributed to Myanmar, Pakistan, Srilanka, Malaysia, Singapore & Java.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and cultivated

Medium sized tree with spreading branches forming a broad crown, stem rough, gray or dark gray; leaves alternate, imparipinnate, leaflets 4-7 pairs, opposite or subopposite, lanceolae to ovate, gloosy, margin coarsely serrate, acuminate, glabrous, green above, pale beneath; flowers greenish-white, numerous in axillary panicles; fruits drup, green turns to yellow when mature, aromatic with garlic like odour.

**Fls. & Frts.:** March-August

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 8.7.2011. Roma-1341.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Young leaves and seeds

**Medicinal uses:**

1. 20-30 ml of decoction of leaves is given twice a day for 10 days to cure fever, cough, diabetes, stomachache and piles.
2. Leaves (1-3) are eaten every day to control hypertension.

3. Paste of leaves is applied on cuts and wounds and juice of leaves is applied on skin diseases.

4. Powder of dried seeds is used as insecticide in the fields and gardens.

**Food:**

Young leaves and tender shoots are eaten as vegetable.

**Established report:** Tender shoot is used in joint pain rheumatism, ringworm, scabies, intestinal worm, fever, piles, leprosy, cuts, wounds, throat problem, ulcer, eczema etc. Bark and root decoction is antiseptic to cuts, wounds and skin diseases. Ash of leaves is used externally on snake-bite and scorpio-sting (Sinha, 1996; Pal & Jain, 1998, John, 2001, Khare, 2004 & Devi et al., 2011a).


**Vern. Name:** *Wa-tingkhang panbi* (K), *Aethingpuh* (M)

**Distribution:** Manipur, Northeastern states of India & Tropical Asia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in forest.

Tall type of grass with short, stout, knotty rhizome, clumps dense, hollow, wall thick with prominent nodes and internodes long, lower nodes rooting, nodes bearing curved spines, green when young and turning golden yellow when mature, stem sheaths coriaceous variable in shape, striate, apex rounded, orange-yellow streaked with red or green when young and covered with golden hairs; leaves linear or linear-lanceolate; flowers in spikes with many flowers; fruits grain, oblong.

**Fls. & Frts.:** Rare

**Specimen examined:** Japhou. 15.4.2009. Roma-728.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Stem
**Medicinal uses:**

About 25 gm of soft stem bark is crushed with 5 ml of honey and is given with a glass of water twice a day for one week to regulate regular menstruation in Kabui community.

**Household material:**

Stem is used to make house and household materials.

**Established report:** The liquid accumulate in the internodes is used to treat asthma.


**Vern. Name:** Urok-sumbal (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, tropical Asia & Africa.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Glabrous climber; leaves ovate-elliptic to oblongate, acute, entire; flowers pinkish in axillary pedunculate spike; fruits globose, deep pinkish.

**Fls. & Frts.:** April-October

**Specimen examined:** Nungtek. 27.7.2011. Roma-1358.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

Warmed leaves are applied on boils.

**Established report:** Leaves are used in gonorrhoea, constipation, anaemia and dysentery. Leaves are demulcent and diuretic (Jojn, 2001).


**Vernacular name:** Zoupungno (K), Meta (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Malaysia, China, Japan & Tropical Africa.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated in jhum fields

Large climber with hispid stem, profusely branched with tendrils, softly hair all over; leaves large, cordate, reniform, orbicular, 5-lobed or angled, hispid
beneath; flower monoecious, large’ yellow, solitary; fruits papo, large, fleshy, oblong, pubescent, seeds many.

**Fls. & Frts.:** March-November

**Specimen examined:** Luinuomphai. 3.8.2011. Roma-1365.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruit

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Paste of fruit is put over forehead to relieve headache.
2. 100 ml of juice of fruit is given once a day for 10 days to treat stomachache.

**Food:**

Fruit is taken as vegetable in, curry, ironba and simple boiled.

**Established report:** Fruits are taken as vegetable. Juice of the leaves is rubbed on bruises as a cooling agent. The powder of the root with warm water is prescribed in asthma and cough (Khare, 2004).


**Vern. Name:** Poksaonui (K), Penchene (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India and America.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Annual herb with much branches, stem quadrangular, branches opposite; leaves variable, sometimes trifoliate, usually consisting of 2 sub-opposite pairs of leaflets and a large deeply 3-lobed terminal leaflets ovate, apex acuminate, terminal leaflets ovate-lanceolate, glabrous on both surface; flowers numerous in heads, ray florates white, pappus of 2-4 rigid, yellow; fruits achene, linear, quadrangular, black, glabrous.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-December

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Changning. 5.8.2009. Roma-773. (Plate-7-C).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & tender
**Medicinal uses:**
Leaves and shoots (10 g) are taken every day for 7-10 months to cure asthma.

**Food:**
Tender shoots are used as vegetable fresh or cooked.

**Established report:** Juice of leaves is applied in cuts and wounds. Root and seeds are used as expectorant and stimulant (Devi *et al.*, 2011a & b).


**Vern. Name:** *Ureirom* (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & America.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Evergreen tree, young branches densely rusty, scaly; leaves alternate, ovate, acuminate, glabrous, based cordate or truncate, scaly beneath, very densely red-dotted stipules oblong, acute, flowers in terminal corymbose panicles, pinkish; fruits capsule, red, ovoid or sub-globose, prinkly, seeds red, pulpy covering.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-April

**Specimen examined:** Chingmeirong. 26.7.2010. Roma-1231. (Plate-7-D).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruit & leaves

**Medicinal uses:**
1. Paste of leaves is applied on snake bite.
2. Leaf juice is applied in skin diseases.

**Dye:**
Fruits are used in dyeing.

**Established report:** Pulp is used for treatment of epilepsy, kidney, and skin diseases. Decoction of leaves is used as gargle for sore throat. Paste of leaves is used in cuts and roots are used in the treatment of fever.

**Vernacular name:** *Tera* (K), *Tirah* (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Myanmar, Java, South-China

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild

Tree, deciduous, stems with conical prickles; leaves spirally alternate, digitately compound, crowded at branch tips, petiole long, leaflets elliptic, oblong elliptic, cuneate at base; flowers showy red in the axils of fallen leaf; fruits capsule, oblong-ovoid.

**Fls. & Frts.:** Feb-August

**Specimen examined:** Langthabal Khoupum. 10.8.2010. Roma-1242. (Plate-7-E).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Seed hairs, flower, root, stem and stem prickle

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Paste of root is applied on snake bite.
2. 30-50 ml of decoction of root is given at bed time to increase sexual impotency.

**Fibre:**

Seed hairs are used as fibre

**Food:**

Flowers are taken as vegetable.

*Stem pickles are taken by covering with leaves of *Lantana camera* by *Monsang* children.

**Timber:**

Stem is used in furniture.

**Established report:** Seeds are used against dog-bite; root is used in liver trouble, sexual impotency, diarrhoea, dysentery. Fruits are used in snake-bite and kidney trouble. Seed hairs are used for making fibre (Pal & Jain, 1998).

*New uses in ethnobotany*

**Vern. Name:** Ganeang (K), Intram (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Cultivated, annual erect herb; leaves large, opposite, lower leaves lyrate, upper leaves lanceolate, sinuate tapering to a stalk long without clasping the stem, decreasing upward, upper ones much smaller without a bloom oblanceolate, cuneate at the base and entire margin; flowers yellow, growing in slender, terminal racemes, tetramerous, fruits pod bivalved, valves convex rigid, thinly leathery.

**Fls. & Frts.:** February-May

**Specimen examined:** Langthabal Khoupum. 7.5.2009. Roma-738.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves, seed and flower

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Leaf is crushed with palm and put over forehead to relieve headache.
2. Mixture of seed oil and salt is applied over the abdomen for indigestion.

**Food:**

Flowering shoots and flowers are taken as vegetable.

Seed oil is used as cooking oil in both tribes.

**Established report:** Seed oil is used as cooking oil, leaves are taken as vegetable. Leaves are used in headache (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** Gannang (K), Intram-din (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, China, Egypt, Myanmar & Thailand.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Erect herb; leaves opposite, pinnate, lobed, oblong-ovate; flowers yellow, growing in slender, terminal racemes, tetramerous; fruit pod.
Fls. & Frts.: February-June

Specimen examined: Nungtek. 27.7.2011. Roma-1359.

Ethnobotanical uses:
Parts used: Leaves, shoots and flower

Medicinal uses:
Mixture of seed oil and salt is applied over the abdomen for indigestion.

Food:
Leaves, shoots, and flowers are taken as vegetable.
Seed oil is used as cooking oil.

Established report: Seed oil is used as cooking oil. Shoots and leaves are taken as vegetable (Devi et al., 2011b).


Vern. Name: Ol-kobi (K & M)

Distribution: All over India & tropical countries.

Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated.

Herb with tuberous root; leaves rossete, green, lower leaves lyrate, hispid, upper leaves auricled, glaucous, glabrous; flower corymbose, greenish white; fruits pod.

Fls. & Frts.: October-February

Specimen examined: Japhou. 5.1.2009. Roma-705.

Ethnobotanical uses:
Parts used: Root

Food:
Tubers are eaten as vegetable.

Established report: Tubers are taken as vegetable (Devi et al., 2011b).

**Vern. Name:** *Chom* (K), *Aamhuw* (M)

**Distribution:** Hillis of Manipur, Khashi-hills & Nepal.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Small tree, rickly; leaves pinnate, leaflets acuminate, serrate, cordate, short prickles on the rachis; flowers in umbel.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-February

**Specimen examined:** Keithelmanbi. 19.9.2010. Roma-1268. (Plate-7-F).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

Tender leaves are taken as blood purifier.

**Food:** Leaves are used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Tenders are used as vegetable (Devi *et al.*, 2011b).


**Vern. Name:** *Mairongbi* (K), *Thing-jangbi* (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India and tropical Asia

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated

Cultivated shrub with slender grey silky branches; leaves trifoliate, petiole ribbed, leaflets elliptic or oblong-lanceolate, acute, silky-velvety, grey beneath; flower corymbose, yellow; fruits pod.

**Fls. & Frts.:** January-October

**Specimen examined:** Khoupum. 7.5.2009. Roma-0737.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves and Fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

100 ml of leaves decoction is given twice a day for five days to cure measles, dysentery.
Bathing with decoction of leaves is prescribed to treat skin diseases.

**Food:**
- Young fruits are used as green vegetables.
- Seeds are eaten as pulses.

**Established report:** Leaf juice is used against amoebiosis and applied on leprosy patients. Smoke of dried leaves is used to treat asthma (Khare, 2001, Pal & Jain, 1998, Sinha, 1996 & Devi *et al*., 2011a).


**Vern. Name:** Hie-ree (K), Thethii (M)

**Distribution:** Manipur, Assam, Tropical Himalaya, Babgladesh, Myanmar & Chittagong.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in forest and domesticated.

- Climber, slender; leaves paripinnate, leaflets few, linear, lanceolate, acuminate, uppermost crowded at the end of the rhachis armed with very short stout and long scattered flattened spines, sheath densely armed with needle like spines; flowers in spadix elongate, decompound, internode sheathed by truncate ciliate, spathes; spike short spreading and recurved; fruits drupe, globose, scale pale yellow when ripe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** January-October


**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Stem, tender shoots & fruits

**Medicinal uses:**
- Tender leaves are eaten twice in a week as curry for long time to control diabetes and hypertension.

**Household materials:**
- Stem is used to build house and house-hold materials for binding instead of nails. Stem is used to make baskets, chairs, tables etc.

**Food:**
- Raw fruits are edible. Tender shoots are taken as vegetable.

**Established report:** Stem is used as cane and fruits are edible.

**Vern. Name:** Mandol (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Assam, Sikkim, Khasia-hills, Peninsular region, Myanmar, China, Vietnam etc.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild

Tree much branching; leaves opposite, ovate, acute, thickly tomentose beneath; peduncle as long as the petiole; flower in cymes, penciled, purple.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-November

**Specimen examined:** Chingmeirong. 15.5.2010. Roma-1273 (Plate-9-B).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Bark, leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

Bathing with the decoction of bark and leaves protect from skin diseases.

**Timber:**

The wood is used to make charcoal and used as timber.

**Established report:** Boiled extract is used to dress wounds and boils. Roots are used to treat skin diseases and decoction of bark and roots is reported to relieve fever, skin diseases and cough (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** Angkrot (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, native to Pakistan and Nepal, Sri-Lanka, China & Malaysia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

Shrub, tomentose; leaves simple, opposite, sessile, ovate, ovate-oblong or obovate, cordate at the base, acute or apiculate; flowers simple in umbel, corolla tubular, white, pubescent with low lubercle at apex; seeds oblong.
Fls. & Frts.: June –December

Specimen examined: Nungtek. 27.7.2011. Roma-1356.

Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves & latex

Medicinal uses:

1. Paste of leaves with mustard oil is applied on toothache, ringworm, scabies, other skin diseases and cow’s skin diseases.
2. Latex is used to teeth cavity and infection of gums.

Established report: Powder of root is used to relieve diarrhoea, dysentery, cough, asthma and fever; paste of roots is used in the treatment of elephantiasis and chronic rheumatism (Khare, 2004).


Vern. Name: Chanong (K), Cha (M)

Distribution: Manipur (Chandel & Tamenglong districts), Assam, Khasi hills, China, Thailand & Vietnam.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild in wastelands and domesticated.

Woody shrub; leaves opposite, elliptic-oblong, acute; flowers solitary in leaf axiles, creamy white; fruits capsule, globose.

Fls. and Frts.: November-March


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Shoots

Medicinal uses:

Fresh leaves (3-5) are given every day to control dysentery.

Beverage:

Tea made of locally available dried tea leaves, ready to serve any time, is kept at every household of Kabui people of Tamenglong.

Food:

*Shoots are taken as vegetable in singju and ametpa (traditional side-dish).
**Biofencing:**

This plant is cultivated as biofencing.

**Established report:** Shoots are used as vegetable. Tender shoots are given to control diabetes (Devi et al., 2011a).

*New uses in ethnobotany*


**Vern. Name:** Mekruk (K & M)

**Frs. & Frts.:** May-December

**Distribution:** Manipur, Assam, Khasi-Hills, Silhet & Nepal.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Tree; leaves long, leaflets ovate-oblong or lanceolate, acuminate, entire, thinly coriaceous, glabrous, shining above; flower short in axillary cyme; fruits drupe.

**Fls. & frts.:** May-December

**Specimen examined:** Langkhong Kabui. 1.8.2011. Roma-1360.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Latex

**Socio-religious:**

Latex obtains from wood is used as essential resin in religious functions and pujas by the Kabui tribe.

**Established report:** Latex is used as resin.


**Vern. Name:** Hawai tebi (K), Beepuw (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Myanmar, Bangladesh & Nepal.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Large perennial climber; leaves pinately trifoliate, base awollen, leaflets ovate to rhomboid elliptic, lateral oblique, terminal largest; axillary racemes; flower purple tinge; fruits large pod, flatten.
**Fls. & Frts:** June-January

**Specimen examined:** Tuisenphai. 27.11.2011. Roma-1407.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits

**Food:**

Young fruits are used as vegetables.

**Established report:** Fruits are taken as vegetable (Devi *et al*., 1011b).


**Vern. Name:** Lam-heibi (K), Rampa thepii & M

**Distribution:** North-East India, Western –Peninsular India, Myanmar & Sri-Lanka.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild

Deciduous small tree, thorny; leaves opposite, ovate, obovate or suborbicular, glabrous; flowers small greenish white in cymes; fruits drupe, oblong-ellipsoid.

**Fls. & Frts.:** August-February

**Specimen examined:** Langthabal Khoupum. 31.8.2010. Roma-1262.(Plate-9-D).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits & Leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

1. 30-50 ml of decoction of fruits and leaves is prescribed twice a day for 10 days in fever, cough and 3 months in piles.

2. Boiled leaves are applied on sprain and muscle pain.

**Established report:** Leaves and fruits are astringent and effective against cough and indigestion. The bark of young branches is used to treat dysentery (Devi *et al*., 2011a).

**Vern. Name:** Taisu (K), Beresii (M)

**Distribution:** All over India, Asian countries, America, Africa, Brazil, Colombia etc.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated

Annual herb, leaves opposite, ovate, oblong, narrowed at both ends; flowers small, white in axillary and terminal racemes; fruits pod.

**Fls. & Frts.** February-July

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 15.6.2011. Roma-1339.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruit

**Spices:**

Fruits are used as spices

**Established report:** Paste of fruits are considered as anti-poisonous and applied on dog bite. Fruits are taken as spices (John, 2001).

60. **Capsicum chinense** Jacq., Hort. Vindob. 3:38.t.67. (Solanaceae)

**Vern. Name:** Chaptaisu (K), Beresi-phuw (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Nagaland & Cuba.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated in jhum fields for their economy

Perennial herb, leaves opposite, ovate, oblong; flowers white in axillary and terminal racemes; fruit pods large, roughed skin, red when ripe.

**Fls. & Frts.** Throughout year


**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruit

**Spices:**

Fruits are used as spices.

**Established report:** Fruits are used as spices.

**Vern. Name:** Chantruk (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Nagaland, China, France & German.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated

Cultivated small herb hairy, roots long tapering; leaves pinnatifid upper lobed triangular, cauline auricled; flowers small white in raceme; fruits pod triangular or obcordate.

**Fls. & Frts.:** February-June


**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts use:** Leaves & shoots

**Food:**

Leaves and shoots are used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Leaves and Tender shoots are used as vegetable (Devi et al., 2011b). It is used for treating heavy menstrual bleeding, nosebleeds, and as a post-partum herb. The herb is both a vasodilator, and also hastens coagulation of blood vessels.


**Vern. Name:** Uchi-hangam (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, temperate regions of India, Nepal & China.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild

Annual herb; leaves variable, basal leaves rosette, imparipinnate, ovate or orbicular irregularly lobed, lyrate; flowers small, white in racemose or sub-corymbose; fruits pod.

**Fls. & Frts.:** Throughout year

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 8.1.2009. Roma-709. (Plate-9-F).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & shoots
Food:
Leaves and shoots are used as vegetable.

Established report: Leaves and shoots are used as vegetable and fodder.


Vern. Name: *Awathabi* (K), *Awa-sahma* (M)

Distribution: Throughout India & Tropical countries of the world.

Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated.

Herbaceous tree with milky latex, sometimes branching above the mid height; leaves alternate forming a crown, long petiole, palmately lobed; flowers dioecious, occasionally monoecious, rarely bisexual, greenish white, male flowers in axillary panicles, pentamerous, stamens 10 in two series, sessile, female flowers large, subsolitary or in very short cymes in leaf axils, sessile; fruits large one celled berry, globose to pyriform.

Fls. & Frts.: Throughout year


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Latex, young leaves & fruits

Medicinal uses:
1. Young leaves (10 g) are eaten in different food items twice in a week to control diabetes and hypertension.
2. Latex is applied on snake bite.

Food:

Young leaves and unripe fruits are used as vegetables.

Ripen fruits are used as fresh fruit.

Established report: Latex is applied in skin diseases; young fruits are taken orally against malarial fever and impotency. Fruits are taken as fresh fruit (Pal & Jain, 1998).

**Vern. Name:** Nongkhal (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Myanmar, Sri-Lanka, Malaysia & Northern-Australia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Unbranched palm, stem with leaf scars; leaves palmately compound; flowers in spadices, pendulose, dark purple in colour; fruits nuts, dark purple when ripe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-December

**Specimen examined:** Heibunglok. 15.8.2011. Roma-1373. (Plate-10-A).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

1. *Fomentation with decoction of leaves is prescribed to relieve sprain and joint pain.
2. 100 ml of decoction of leaves is given once a day for 10 day to cure leucorrhoea.
3. Paste of leaves is applied on forehead to relieve headache.

**Established report:** Fermented juice of matured leaves with honey in the treatment of hypochondriasis and inflorescences are used to prepare a kind of beverage used by Lodha tribe (John, 2001 & Pal & Jain, 1998).

*New uses in ethnobotany*

65. **Cassia alata** L., Sp. Pl. 1:378.1753; Kanjilal *et al*., Fl. Assam 2:133.1938. (Caesalpiniaceae)

**Vern. Name:** Daopata (K & M)

**Distribution:** North eastern states of India & South-America.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Wild shrub; leaves pinnate, leaflets oblong, cuspidate, obtuse; flowers large, bright yellow; fruits pod.

**Fls. & Frts.:** September-March

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 24.11.2011. Roma-1406.
Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Flowers

Medicinal uses:

50 ml of decoction of flowers is given once a day every day to control diabetes.

Established report: Paste of leaves is applied on ringworm and snake-bite. Decoction of leaves is given to asthma and bronchitis (Sinha, 1996).


Vern. Name: Chaohui (K & M)

Distribution: All over India & Tropical countries of the world.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild.

Wild deciduous tree with spreading crown, bark gray, smooth with wrinkles; leaves rhachis puberculous, leaflets 4-8 pairs, opposite, ovate or elliptic-oblong, dark green and shining above, silvery pubescent beneath when young, puberulous on maturity; flower yellow in axillary lax drooping racemes; fruit pod.

Fls. & Frts.: April-December


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Fruits

Medicinal uses:

Paste of leaves is applied in septic wounds.

Veterinary uses:

Leaves and pods are given to cattle in indigestion.

Established report: Leaf juice is used in skin diseases. Paste of leaves is applied to cure piles and root decoction is given to relieve fever (Pal & Jain, 1998).

**Vern. Name:** Thaonam (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild, domesticated.

Shrub; leaves paripinnate with a gland between each pairs of leaflets except the uppermost pair, leaflets lanceolate, cuspidate, acuminate; flowers yellow in corymbose racemes; fruits pod.

**Fls. and Frts.:** March-September

**Specimen examined:** Heibunglok. 17.8.2010. Roma-1250. (Plate-10-B).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & pods

**Medicinal uses:**

*Juice of leaves is applied in skin diseases.*

**Food:**

Pods are edible as vegetable.

**Established report:** Pods are taken as vegetable (Devi *et al*., 2011b).

*New uses in ethnobotany*


**Vern. Name:** Thangji (K), Rohsii (M)

**Distribution:** Manipur, Assam, Khasi-hills, Chittagong & Myanmar.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in forest.

Evergreen tree, bark grayish brown, warty; leaves distichous, lanceolate or oblong lanceolate, acuminate, thinly coriaceous, shining above, pale beneath, arcuate at the margin, petiole short: male spike erect, solitary or subpanicled: femal flowers solitary: fruits ovoid.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-February

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 24.11.2011. Roma-1401.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Stem & fruit
Timber:
Stem is used to make furniture and household materials.

Food:
Fruits are edible.

Established report: Stem is used for furniture and other wood works.


Vern. Name: Haorei (K & M)

Distribution: Throughout India, Tropical Asia, Africa, America etc.

Cultivated annual herb, erect; leaves lanceolate, oblong to narrowly linear, acute to obtuse, shortly mucronate with the excurrent midrib, glabrous; flowers in dense spike, silvery to pink; fruits capsule, ovoid to almost globulifer.

**Fls. & Frts.**: October-January


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Shoots & flowers

Medicinal uses:

Young leaves are eaten as curry twice in a week as blood purifier.

Food:

Shoots are used as vegetable.

Ornamental:

It is cultivated as ornamental.

Established report: Seeds are used to treat diarrhea, mouth sores, urinary trouble, cough, worm infection and eye diseases (Khare, 2004).


Vern. Name: Kolai (K), Shiwin (M)

Distribution: Throughout India, Sri Lanka, tropical & subtropical countries.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.
Prostrate, herb with perennial rootstock; stem creeping, rooting at the nodes, puberulous; leaves in rosettes, orbicular, reniform base cordate, crenate-dentate or lobulate along margins, petioles long; flowers in umbels at the nodes with ovate-lanceolate bracts, purplish red, subsessile or sessile; fruits compressed, dorsal ribs 7-9 with the secondary ridges.

**Fls. & Frts.:** Whole year

**Specimen examined:** Langthabal Khoupum. 29.11.2009. Roma-796. (Plate-10-C).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plant

**Medicinal uses:**

1. 100 ml of decoction of whole plant with a spoon of honey is given twice a day for 10 days to cough, fever, stomach trouble and for long time to control hypertension.

2. Paste of leaves is applied on cuts and wounds.

3. A glass of fresh leaf extract is given with a spoon of honey in chest trouble.

**Hair lotion:**

Whole plants are used in hair-lotion.

**Food:**

Whole plants are taken as vegetable.

**Established report:** It is diuretic and tonic; whole plants are used for anaemia, nervous weakness, sexual disability, boils, wounds, fever, and poor memory also used as blood purifier (Devi et al., 2011a).


**Vern. Name:** Lukhoibi (K & M)

**Distribution:** North-Eastern India, South U.S.A., South-East Asia, Centar and South America & West Indies.

**Habitat:** Commonly found in swampy area.
Erect, fleshy; scales lanceolate, apex acute, stipes ridged, scales scattered sparsely; fronds dimorphic, sterile lamina bipinnate, fertile lamina branched; sori yellowish, sporangia born in a single line along marginal veins.

**Fertile period:** Throughout the year

**Specimen examined:** Noney. 19.9.2010. Roma-1270. (Plate-10-D).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Tender shoots

**Fodder:**

Plants are used as fodder.

**Food:**

Young shoots and apical parts are taken as vegetable.

**Established report:** It is taken as vegetable (Devi et al., 2011b).

---


**Vern. Name:** Monsaobi (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Australia & Africa.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in wasteland areas.

Annual erect herb covered with minute scurfy scales; leaves varies, smaller upwards, lower ones 10-15 cm long, oblong-lanceolate, base decurrent into the short petiole; flowers minute, flower minute in panicle clusters, pentamemorous, perianth, 5 lobes, connate at the base.

**Fls. & Frts.:** August-February

**Specimen examined:** Langkhong Kabui. 1.8.2011. Roma-1363.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & shoots

**Medicinal uses:**

Paste of leaves is applied on cuts and wounds and sores of cattle.

**Food:**

Young leaves and shoots are taken as vegetable.

**Established report:** Plants are used as vegetable (Devi et al., 2011b).

**Vern. Name:** Chandramukhi (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated

Perennial, herb with slender branching, stem grey, pubescent; leaves deltoid, ovate in outline, ultimate, segments linear or cuneate, the teeth acute or mucronate; flowers white or golden yellow in head, many small clusters on short peduncles, involucral bracts widely spreading, oblong, outer ones scarious; fruits achene.

**Fls. & Frts.:** August-December

**Specimen examined:** Noney. 1.12.2011. Roma-1415.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole Plants

**Insecticide:**

Flowers are used as insect repellent like mosquito and small insects.

**Ornament:**

Plants are cultivated as ornamentals in the gardens.

**Established report:** Plants are cultivated for ornamental.


**Vernacular name:** Chana (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & western Asia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Cultivated annual herb; leaves imparipinate, stipule large, leaflets many, deeply toothed; flower bluish purple, axillary, solitary, calyx tube, oblique, fruit pod sessile, turgid, two seeded.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-March

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 8.8.2010. 1239.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Seeds & tender shoots
Food:

Seeds are used as pulses.

Shoots are taken as vegetable.

Established report: Leaves are used to treat bronchitis, leaf powder is used against diabetes. Juice of plant is used in diarrhoea, dysentery. Seeds are given to vitamin deficiency diseases and scurvy (John, 2001). Seeds are used as pulses and leaves are used as vegetable and fodder.


Vern. Name: Tekphaitanui (K), Tejpata (M)

Distribution: All over India & South-Eastern Asia.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild common in forest.

Wild, tree medium sized, evergreen, bark dark brown; leaves opposite or sometimes alternate, petiolate, elliptical or oblong, lanceolate, acuminate, glabrous, pink when young, leaf buds with small scales, panicle long; flower pale yellow, pubescent, perianth silky.

Fls. & Frts.: February-July


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves

Medicinal uses:

1. Paste of leaves is applied on snake bite.
2. Some leaves are added to boil drinking water for curing bad breathing, bad body smell and bronchial infection.

Spices:

Leaves are used as condiment of curry, tea and kheer.

Established report: Decoction of bark and leaves is applied in gonorrhoea, diarrhoea, colic pain, snake-bite and enlargement of spleen (Khare, 2004).
76. **Cinnamomum verum** J. Presl., Prir. Rostlin 2:37.1825. (Lauraceae)

**Vern. Name:** Ushingsha (K), Using-sa (M)

**Distribution:** Manipur, India & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild common in forest.

Small tree, bark smooth, thin, pale brown with pleasant smell; leaves opposite, 3-5 ribed with prominent venation, ovate or ovate-lanceolate, acute or acuminate apex; flowers numerous, greenish-white, silky-pubescent in axillary panicle; fruits berry, elliptic to oblong-ovoid, green turning black purple when ripe.

**Frs. & Frts.:** December-July

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Changning. 12.10.2009. Roma-780.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Bark

**Spices:**

Bark is used as spices.

**Established report:** Bark is used as aromatic, It is used in stomach complain, gastric irritation, ganarrhoea, tuberculosis etc (Pal & Jain, 1998).


**Vern. Name:** Kongouyen (K), Jangkim (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur and North-Eastern states of India & Australia

**Habitat:** Common found in hills and domesticated

Shrub, climber, branched, tendril leaves opposed, bifid; leaves simple, ovate to orbicular, base cordate, acute to acuminate, serrate; flowers in cyme, greenish yellow, tetramerous; fruits berry ovoid, black.

**Fls. & Frts.:** July-December

**Specimen examined:** Noney. 19.9.2010. Roma-1272. (Plate-10-E).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaf
**Medicinal uses:**
Leaves are taken as curry for a week to control dysentery, urinary trouble, stone case and indigestion.

**Food:**
Leaves are taken as vegetable.

**Established report:** Leaves are used as vegetable (Devi et al., 2011b).


**Vern. Name:** Kongouyen laba (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Northeastern states of India & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Climbing in forest trees.

Wild, climber with hard base, branches slender, subangular, red, smooth; leaves ovate-lanceolate, acute or acuminate, crenate, serrate, membranous, cordate or subtruncate at the base, glabrous with irregular translucent white botches on the upper surface, purple beneath; tendrils froked; flowers tetramerous in umbellate cymes, calyx fleshy, petals yellowish; fruits reddish purple to black.

**Fls. & Frts.:** August-February

**Specimen examined:** Langthabal Khoupum. 20.4.2008. Roma-729. (Plate-10-F).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves

**Medicinal uses:**
A glass of leaf decoction is prescribed twice a day for 1 month to stomach trouble and used to treat stone cases.

**Food:**
Leaves are used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Leaves are given to treat gall stone cases and other stomach troubles (Devi et al., 2011a).

**Vern. Name:** Komla (K & M)

**Distribution:** Tamenglong District of Manipur, India, America, Africa, Australia & Brazil.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Cultivated small tree with straight thorns, darker and denser foliage; leaves alternate, lanceolate to ovate-lanceolate, entire or crenate; flower waxy white usually tinged with sweet scented; fruit yellow when ripe, smooth, thin and loose skinned.

**Fls. & Frts.:** March-October

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 17.5.2009. Roma-0745.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

A glass of fruit juice is given once a day for 1 month to improve intestinal infection, dysentery and indigestion.

**Food:**

Fruits are preserved to make juice or local wine.

Fruit is taken as fresh fruit.

**Established report:** Fruits are used as tonic and juice. Fruits are used as fruits (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** Tassangthai (K), Champra (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Bushy shrub, young shoots glabrous, angled spines ascending straight, bark greenish; leaves alternate; flower waxy white usually tinged with red sweet scented; fruit yellow when ripe.

**Frs. & Frts.:** February –October

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Khullen. 22.5.2009. Roma-747.

**Fls. & Frts.:** February-October
Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves & fruit

Medicinal uses:

1. Mixture of juice of one lemon, a glass of luke warm water, two spoon of honey is given twice a day for a week to treat cough, tooth bleeding, indigestion and constipation.
2. Juice of fruit is applied over face at bed time for treating black spots of face.

Hair lotion:

Leaves are also used as hair lotion.

Food:

Fruit is taken as fruit and is cooked sour curry in social feast.
Leaves are used as condiment in black tea.

Established report: Fruits are used to make juice. Fruit juice is given to indigestion and they are taken as fresh fruit (Devi et al., 2011a).


Vern. Name: Heiribob (K), Shiirpho (M)

Distribution: Hill districts of Manipur, Assam, Malaysia & Polynesia.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild and cultivated.

Tree, medium sized, cultivated; leaves broadly winged, wings cordate, oblong-ovate, leaf blade ovate-elliptic, obtuse base, obtuse or emerginate apex; flowers white in cyme; fruits oblate-pyriform.

Fls. & Frts.: February-December


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Fruits

Medicinal uses:

1. Juice of two fruits is added in 1 l of lime water for a week. A glass of this lime water is given every day for 3 month to cure gall stone cases.
2. Juice of fruit is used as skin lotion.
Spices:

Peel of fruits is used as spices and pulp is edible.

Established report: Fruit juice with salt is used in colic pain. Fruit juice is used to kill land leeches. Fruits are used as spices (Sinha, 1996 & Devi et al., 2011a).


Vern. Name: Nobab (K & M)

Distribution: Manipur, India & Asian countries.

Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated

Cultivated tree, profusely branching, young parts pubescent; leaves simple, ovate oblong or oblanceolate, crenate, shining above, pubescent beneath, petioles broadly winged, obovate or oblanceolate; flowers white, sweet scented; fruits large, globose, yellowish when ripe, rind thick, spongy.

Fls. & Frts.: February-October


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Fruits

Food:

Fruits are eaten as fruit.

Insecticide:

Dried peel is used as mosquito repellant.

Established report: Fruits are eaten as fresh fruit (Devi et al., 2012).


Vern. Name: Inpunthai (K), Bisir (M)

Part used: Leaves and fruit

Distribution: Manipur, India, Asian countries & Europe.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild and cultivated
Shrub with stout thorns; leaves ovate-elliptic or oblong-lanceolate, crenate, obtuse, narrowed at the base; flowers white linged with red, sweet scented, solitary or racemose, sometimes unisexual; fruits obovate-oblong, yellow when ripe with thick rind.

**Fls. & Frts:** March-December

**Specimen examined:** Nungba. 27.1.2009. Roma-795. (Plate-11-B).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

Boiled leaves are applied on burning to relieve the hot sensation and to cure the burnt spot.

**Food:**

Fruits are taken as fruit.

**Established report:** Fruits are taken as fresh fruit and leaves are used in burns (Devi et al., 2011a).


**Vern. Name:** Kuthap angouba (K), Enphuw (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Assam, Khasi-hills, Sikkim & Thailand.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in wastelands and domesticated.

Perennial shrub, occurs in wild and also cultivated, young stems shiny green, light grey at mature, leaves opposite decussate, petiolet, flowers numerous, bracteates, white in colour, fruit drupe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-October

**Specimen examined:** Chingmeirong. 25.5.2010. Roma-1211. (Plate-11-C).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Leaves are eaten as curry as raw or cooked, every day for controlling hypertension.

2. Tender shoots are also used for retarding over flow of breast milk.
3. A glass of leaf decoction is given twice a day for ten days to cure cough and dysentery.
4. Leaf paste is applied on skin diseases.

**Food:**

Young shoots are eaten as vegetable in curry, boiled and with meals.

**Established report:** Leaves are used to control hypertension (Devi *et al*., 2011a).


**Vern. Name:** Charoidong (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild found in wastelands

Wild shrub with fluted hollow stem leaves simple, lanceolet. Panicle terminal elongate; corolla glabrous white, tube long.

**Fls. & Frts.:** August-March

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Sarei. 6.9.2009. Roma-779.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & root

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Root decoction (half glass) is given twice a day for 5 days to cure cough.
2. Pastes of leaves with rice water are applied to the swelling parts and boil.

**Established report:** Smoke of dried root powder is applied to treat asthma and paste of leaves and roots is applied on cuts and wounds. Seed paste is applied to septic of callus (Pal & Jain, 1998).

86. *Clerodendrum philippinum* Schauer, Prodr. (DC.) 11:667. 1847 (Verbenaceae)

**Vern. Name:** Kuthap athonba (K), Enphuw (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & tropical Asia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild

Wild shrub, branches quadrangular, hairy, canaliculated, green; leaves wavy or entire rarely irregular dentate margin, ovate, cordate or sub-truncate at
the base, acute; flowers bractiate, pedicellate, numerous, white with reddish purple; fruits are absent due to sterile of ovule.

**Fls. & Frts.** August-December

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 1.11.2011. Roma-1383.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Tender leaves

**Food:**

Young leaves are eaten as vegetable in 'ooti'.

**Established report:** Tender leaves are used as vegetable.


**Vern. Name:** Moirang-khanum (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Assam. Nagaland, Khasia-hills, West Bengal & Sri Lanka.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in wastelands and foot hills.

Shrub; leaves subsessile oblong or elliptic, acuminate, serrate, base cuneate, pubescent on the lamina beneath; panicle terminal sub-pyramidal, conspicuously bracteates, corolla lobes-4, older than the others; fruit drupe becomes black when ripe.

**Fls. & Frts.** June-December

**Specimen examined:** Langthabal Khoupum. 26.7.2009. Roma-770. (Plate-11-D).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Tender shoots & flowers

**Medicinal uses:**

Tenders leaves and flowers (10g) are eaten to cure stomach pain, intestinal trouble, cough, cold and for 3 months to control diabetes and hypertension.

**Food:**

Young shoots and flowers are used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Roots and leaves are used in respiratory diseases. Cough, epilepsy, asthma, fever, dropsy, mental disorder and coryza (John, 2001). Leaves
are boiled in oil or butter for making ointment used to treat headache and ophthalmia (Khare, 2004).


**Vern. name:** Aprajita (K), Krishna nakong (M)

**Distribution:** All over India, Tropical Asia, Africa, Australia & America.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, climber, cultivated as ornamental

Perennial herb, leaves elliptic, obluse, bracteoles persistant; flowers deep blue or white, solitary in axillary peduncle; fruits pod.

**Fls. & Frts.:** Whole year

**Specimen examined:** Moirangkhom. 17.3.2012. Roma-1364.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Root

**Medicinal uses:**

A spoon of juice of root with a spoon of honey is given thrice a day for a week to cure cough. This juice is applied on joint pain and snake bite.

**Ornament:**

Plants are cultivated as ornamental.

**Established report:** Flowers are used to colour food. Flowers are used to cure goiter. Root extract is capable of curing whooping cough. In Myanmar, flowers are used as food, often they dip in butter and fry (Khare, 2004).


**Vern. Name:** Moom (K), Niimhma (M)

**Distribution:** Hill districts of Manipur, Northeastern states of India & Asian countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated in jhums.

Stout tall grass with culms, rooting at the lower nodes, internodes glabrous; leaves wide narrowed from a broad cordate base to an acuminate tips,
smooth both surface, margin spinuoslly serrate, midrib stout, sheaths long
smooth, legule narrow membranous; flowers in racemes, female racemes erect,
spike mostly paired, imbricatimg, orange colour; female racemes enclosed
within a bead-like auricle, white to bluish, globose, hard when ripe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** July-December

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 12.10.2010. Roma-1278 (Plate-11-E).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Seeds

**Medicinal uses:**

100 ml of decoction of seeds is taken once a day for 1 month as blood
purifier for women.

**Food:**

Seeds are used to make local liquor which is used in religious ceremonies
and given to their important guest.

Seeds are used as food-grain.

**Established report:** Roots and grains are useful in disorder of menstruation,
tonic and as diuretic. Grains are used for inflamation of urinary tract (Sinha,
1996).

90. **Colocasia esculenta** (L.) Schott., Meet 1:18.1832; Rao & Verma. in Bull.

**Vern. Name:** *Bee* (K), *Bar* (M)

**Distribution:** All over India & Tropical Asia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild or cultivated in the jhum.

Herb with root stalk; leaves cordate or sagittate at the base, pattate,
triangular, ovate, base lobes rounded, petiole long green; spatthes long, pale-
yellow, caudate, acuminate; fruits berry.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-September

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 10.10.2010. Roma-1275 (Plate-11-F).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Corm, Petiole & leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

Petiole is rubbed with lime to take out skin tumer (*Sagik*- Manipuri).
Food:

- Fleshy petioles are used as fodder for pigs.
- Leaves are used as vegetable in ‘ooti’ (traditional dish).
- Corms are edible.

Established report: Juice of the petiole is styptic, stimulant and rubifacient. Corm extract is used in alopecia and scorpion sting (Sinha, 1996).

91. **Colocasia gigantia** (Blume) Hook. f., Fl. Brit. Ind. 6:524. 1894. (Araceae)

Vern. Name: *Yendem* (K), *Shersha* (M)


Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated in homegardens.

- Perennial herb with corm; leaves very large ovate-cordate, spathe, limb oblong or elliptic-oblong cymbiform cuspidate, appendage very short, acute; flowers yellow in spadix; fruits berry.

Fls. & Frts.: March- August

Specimen examined: Bolongdai. 2.4.2011. Roma-1318. (Plate-12-A).

Ethnobotanical uses:

- Parts used: Whole plants

Medicinal uses:

- Stalks are given as curry to mother after child birth as blood purifier.

Food:

- Corm and petioles are used as vegetable.
- Young leaves are also taken as vegetable.

Established report: Corms and stalks are used as vegetables (Devi *et al.*, 2011b).


Vern. Name: *Nunghidak* (K & M)

Distribution: All over India & tropical countries of the world.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild

- Plants are annual herb, Plants pubescent and glandular; leaves linear, lanceolate, entire; involucral bracts more than one seriate; plants up to 30 cm
tall, capitulum solitary, on the slender stalks, forming a leafy corymbose paicle; involucral bracts 2-3 seriate; flowers pale purple and sometimes white.

**Fls. & Frts.** June – December

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 30.12.2008. Roma-703.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plants

**Medicinal uses:**

*One glass of plant decoction is given twice a day for two months to cure gall stone case till the stone is expelled out.*

Paste of leaves is used in cuts and wounds.

**Established report:** Plants are used in cuts and wounds (Devi *et al.*, 2011a).

**New uses in Ethnobotany**


**Vern. Name:** *Ananbi* (K), *Limon* (M)

**Distribution:** Manipur and warmer parts India & tropical countries of Asia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated

Annual, erect, tall shrub; leaves ovate-lanceolate to linear, lanceolate, acute or acuminate, serrate basal, serratus on each side usually prolonged into a tail like appendages; panicle slender, stipule filiform; flowers in short cyme; fruits capsule, subglobose.

**Fls. & Frts.** April–October

**Specimen examined:** Sekjang Tuiphai. 7.8.2011. Roma-1372.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Above ground parts

**Fibre:**

It is cultivated for fibre yielding.

**Food:**

Young leanves and shoots are eaten as vegetable.

**Firewood:**

Bark pilled stems are used as firewood.
Established report: Bark is used to make jute. Tender shoots are taken as vegetable. Roots and unripe fruits are used in diarrhea (Sinha, 1996).


Vern. Name: *Maruaisunmei* (K), *Phadigom* (M)  
Distribution: Throughout India & Tropical countries.  
Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated.  
Annual herb; stem slender; leaves pinnately decompound, short petiole, lower leaves segmented, ovate-lanceolate, crenate, upper leaves linear; flowers white, minute in compound umbels; fruits capsule sub-globose.  
Fls. & Frts.: Whole year  
Ethnobotanical uses:  
Parts used: Leaves, flowers & seeds  
Medicinal uses:  
Juice (10 ml) of leaves is taken once a day for 5 days to treat cold, indigestion, intestinal trouble, sore throat and vomiting.  
Spices:  
Leaves and fruits are used as spices.  
Established report: Juice of plants is used for dyspnoea, flatulence, indigestion, bleeding piles, intestinal trouble, sore throat and vomiting. Plants are used as spices (Khare, 2004).

Vern. Name: *Okchak-khombi* (K & M)  
Distribution: India, Bhutan, China, Malaysia, Nepal & Sri-Lanka.  
Habitat: Common in marshy, swamp areas  
Errect succulent herb; leaves spirally arranged on stem, acuminate, subsessile; flowers white lip with yellow heart; fruits capsule.  
Fls. & Frts.: June-November

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Rhizome

**Medicinal uses:**

1. A glass of decoction of rhizome is given once a day for 5 days to prevent dysentery and urinary trouble
2. A glass of rhizome decoction is given once a day for 2-3 months to control diabetes.
3. Paste of rhizome is applied on snake bite.

**Established report:** Paste of rhizome is applied in snake bite cases. Regularly taking of rhizome, control child birth and juice is used as ear drop (Sinha, 1996 & Devi et al., 2011a).

96. *Crassocephalum crepidioides* S. Moore, J. Bot. 50: 211.1912. (Asteraceae)

**Vern. Name:** Jadnangpu (K), Terapaibi (M)

**Distribution:** Northeastern satates of India & warmer parts of India

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Herb; leaves sessile, spirally arranged, obovate or elliptic-lanceolate or oblong-acuminate, margins irregularly toothed, glabrous or with scanty hairs mostly on veins; flowers red in capitula in large terminal panicles; fruits achenes with white pappus.

**Fls. & Frts.:** August-March

**Specimen examined:** Japhou. 5.1.2009. Roma-706. (Plate-12-C).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Shoots & leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

1. A glass of decoction of leaves is given with a spoon of honey to cure stomach ulcers and troubles.
2. Leaves are taken as fresh or cooked every day to control hypertension.
3. Paste of leaves is applied on cuts and wounds.

**Hair lotion:**

Leaves are used as hair lotion.
Food:

Shoots and young leaves are taken as vegetable.

Established report: Leaves are used in cuts and wounds (Sinha, 1996). Leaves are used as vegetable.


Vern. Name: *U-hawaimaton* (M)

Distribution: Throughout India & Tropical countries.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild common in waste lands.

Small herb with ascending terete slender silky branches; leaves linear to ovate-oblong, covered with silky hairs on both surface; flowers in racemes simple terminal, bracts minute yellow; fruits pod.

Fls. & Frts.: January-May

Specimen examined: Monsang Pantha. 5.1.2009. Roma-704. (Plate-12-D).

Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves & fruits

Food:

Leaves and young pods are used as vegetable.

Established report: Plants are cultivated as ornamental in the garden and leaves are taken as vegetable (Devi *et al.*, 2011b).

98. *Croton caudatus* Geiser, Croton Monogr. 73.1807; Hook. f., Fl. Brit. Ind. 5:389.1890; Kanjilal *et al.*, Fl. Assam 4:194.1940. (Euphorbiaceae)

Vernacular name: *Dhamdai* (K), *Biknal* (M)

Distribution: North-eastern states of India, Southern India, Sri Lanka, Nepal, China & Malaysia.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild common in foot hills and river banks.

Scanned shrub; leaves ovate-orbicular, cordate at the base; flowers pale yellow in terminal racemes; fruits capsule.

Fls. & Frts.: March-October

Specimen examined: Bolongdai. 27.11.2011. Roma-1408. (Plate-12-F).
**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Juice of leaves is used in skin diseases like scabies, ringworm, measles and other skin diseases.
2. Paste of leaves is applied on boils and in cuts and wounds.

**Established report:** Leaves are used in skin diseases and leaf decoction is given to cure constipation. Tender leaves are used for cholera (Das *et al.*, 2010).


**Vern. Name:** Tarbuz (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Cultivated in jhum fields.

- Perennial creeper; leaves suborbicular, 5-lobed, scabrous on both surface cordate at base; flowers small, yellow, solitary; male flowers borne in small clusters, female solitary; fruits rounded to ellipsoid, obscurely trigonous.

**Fls. & Frts.:** March-December

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Changning. 30.11.2011. Roma-1413.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

- Fruits are taken for treating eczema and urinary trouble.

**Food:**

- It is used as fresh fruit.

**Established report:** Seeds are considered diuretic and cooling. Pulp is used to treat chronic eczema (Sinha, 1996). Fruits are taken as fresh fruit.


**Vern. Name:** Ngainathai (K), Shamhmii (M)

**Distribution:** All over India & Tropical countries.
**Habitat:** Cultivated in jhum fields and home gardens.

Annual climber; leaves simple petiolate, broadly cordate, ovate, 5-angled, tendril simple; flowers monoecous, small, yellow; female flowers fascicled with slender peduncle; female flowers solitary, peduncles short, fruits oblong, trigonous cylindric.

**Fls. & Frts.:** March-October

**Specimen examined:** Japhou. 23.6.2008. Roma-601.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

Slice of young fruits is placed on closed eyes for cooling.

**Food:**

Plants are cultivated for edible fruits and also used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Fruits are nutritive, cooling, rich in vit. B and diuretic (Sinha, 1996).

---


**Vernacular name:** Pungmohangmei (K), Merin (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, Cultivated in jhum fields and home gardens.

Annual prostrate, hispid; stem cylindrical, grooved; leaves large, suborbicular, reniform, shallowly. 5 lobed, densely and minutely dentate at the margin; male peduncle solitary, terete, hirsute; female flower swollen at the base, glanduliform

**Fls. & Frts.:** April-October

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Changning. 30.11.2011. Roma-1412. (Plate-12-E).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Young shoots, root & fruit

**Medicinal uses:**

A glass of decoction of root is prescribed once a day for 1 month to treat asthma, urinary infection and cough.
Food:

Young shoot and fruits are used as vegetables.

Established report: Seeds are used in ringworm, anthemintic and tonic; fruit pulp is used as poultice to burns, boils and inflammation (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** Leikang-urei (M)

**Distribution:** All over India, Malaysia & Colombia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Small, perennial herb; leaves arising from root base, linear-lanceolate, sparsely hairy, acute, bearing bulbils; flowers small, bright yellow, just above the ground; fruits capsule.

**Fls. & Frts.:** March-July

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 29.3.2011. Roma-1317.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Rhizome

**Medicinal uses:**

10-20 ml of juice of rhizome is given orally once a day for 3 month to treat asthma.

Paste of rhizome is applied for treating boils and cut and wounds.

Established report: Paste of rhizome is applied on boils. Juice of rhizome is given for treating leucorrhoea, jaundice, asthma, diarrhoea (John, 2001).


**Vern. Name:** Yaipal (K), Actaang (M)

**Distribution:** Manipur, Central Himalaya, Bihar, West-Bengal, Maharashtra & South-India.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild common in wastelands of hilllok
Herb with ovoid rhizome; leaves large, oblong-lanceolate, tapering to the base; flowers light-pink to deep-pink in spike, flowering is advanced from shooting.

**Fls. & Frts.:** February-June

**Specimen examined:** Heibunglok. 29.3.2011. Roma-1316. (Plate-13-A).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Flower & rhizome

**Medicinal uses:**

*20-50 g of paste of rhizome with of a spoon of honey is given once a day for 3 months to cure asthma.*

**Spices:**

Flowers are taken as spices and vegetable.

**Established report:** It is used in urinary disorders, diarrhoea, dysentery, stomachache and rhizome is used as tonic (Khare, 2004).

*New uses in ethnomedicine.*


**Vern. Name:** Yaimu (K), Actaang (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, warmer regions of India & China.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Aromatic herb; leaves elliptic-oblong with the base passing gradually into the winged petiole with a finely twisted apex; flowers in spike, distinct, purple.

**Fls. & Frts.:** February-June

**Specimen examined:** Khoupum. 31.8.2010. Roma-1263 (Plate-13-B).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Rhizome

**Medicinal uses:**

20-30 ml of juice of rhizome with a little amount of honey is given to cure asthma, stomach trouble and intestinal problem. Juice of rhizome is applied on skin diseases.

**Established report:** Rhizomes are used in intestinal infections, sprains and snake bite (Sinha, 1996).

**Vern. Name:** Zeichrean (K), Nunghning (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated in jhums.

Cultivated, herb with large root stalk, cylindrical yellow rhizome; leaves large, oblong lanceolate, tapering to the base, petiole long as leaf blade; flowers bractiate, ale yellow in spike, appearing with the leaves in the middle of leaflets.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-October

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 5.4.2009. Roma-722. (Plate-13-C).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Rhizomes, flowers & leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Paste of rhizome is applied on cuts and wounds.
2. Juice of rhizome is used as cosmetics for fairness of complexion.

**Food:**

Leaves are used to wrap ‘Nganam or Paknam’ an indigenous food.

Flowers are used as vegetable.

**Spices:**

Rhizome is used as spices, flowers and leaves are also used as spices.

**Established report:** Paste of rhizomes has strong antiseptic properties and used in cuts and wounds (Devi *et al.*, 2011a). Rhizomes are used as spices.


**Vern. Name:** Tekhao-yaikhu (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Musoorie, Dehra Doon, China & Nepal.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Aromatic herb with large rootstock; leaves elliptic-oblong, narrowed at the base passing gradually into the winged petiole; flowers in spike, distinct, purple.

**Fls. & Frts.:** February-June

Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Rhizome

Medicinal uses:

Juice of rhizome is applied in skin diseases; 50 ml of juice of rhizome with a spoon of honey is given twice a day for 10 days to cure asthma, stomach trouble and intestinal problem. It is also used as antibiotic.

Established report: Rhizomes are used in intestinal infections.


Vern. Name: *Uri-napu* (K), *Chingcherovuh* (M)

Distribution: All over India, Sri-Lanka & Malaysia.

Habitat: Common on roadside bushy plants.

Fls. and Frts.: August- January


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Whole plant

Medicinal uses:

Momentation with dicoction of whole plants is applied to relieve sprain, muscle pain, Joint pain etc. till the effect iss relieved.

Established report: Plant extract is used in liver complains and flatulence. Plant juice is given in jaundice, fever (Devi *et al*., 2011a).


Vern. Name: *Simpong* (K), *Entang-enn* (M)

Distribution: Bihar, Sikkim, Assam, Bangladesh, Myanmar & Nepal.
Habitat: Terrestrial, wild in forest and domesticated.

Palm like small tree, evergreen, glabrous; leaves long, segmented (15-25), rachis long, base more or less sheathing; male cone antheriferous, carpophylls long, silky, bladea almost orbicular; ovule pairs, glabrous, seeds ovoid, orange or yellowish orange in colour.

Fls. & Frts.: Rare


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Young leaves & Female cones

Medicinal uses:

* 2-5 ovules are boiled in 1l of water till the water is 1/3th. This decoction (half a glass) is given twice a day for three months to control diabetes.

Food:

Leaves are taken as vegetables, fresh or cooked.

Established report: Leaves are used as vegetable (Devi et al., 2011b).

*New uses in ethnobotany


Vern. Name: Tingthou (K & M)

Distribution: All over India & other warmer regions of the country.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild.

Creeping perennial grass with flat rhizome and stolons; leaves narrowly linear or lanceolate, glabrous with white hairs; flowers greenish white in spike radiating from the top of a slender peduncle, involucral glumes lanceolate, acute, floral glume obliquely oblong to semi-ovate.

Fls. & Frts.: October-May


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Whole plant

Medicinal uses:

1. Paste of plants is used to promote healing of fresh cuts and wounds.
2. Juice (10 ml) of plants is used orally with a spoon of honey twice a day for 10 days to cure diarrhoea and dysentery and for 3 months to cure bleeding piles.

Established report: Plant juice is used in dropsy, epilepsy, insanity, dysentery, diarrhoea etc. Rhizome is used in genitor-urinary (Kgare, 2004, Sinha, 1996 & Devi et al, 2011a).


Vern. Name: *Sempang-kauthum* (K & M)

Distribution: All over the India & Tropical regions of the country

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild

Small, annual herb, glabrous with hard black tubers; leaves linear, acuminate; flowers in globose head, spikelets ovate-lanceolate; fruits nut.

Fls. and Frts.: June- September


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Tuber

Medicinal uses:

1-3 roots are crushed with a spoon of honey and is given twice a day for a week to cure fever of children.

Established report: Root is antidote to poison; paste of tuber is used in piles and as refrigerant, diuretic, diabetes (John, 2001 & Devi et al., 2011a).


Vern. Name: *Panthaukhiangdaimai* (K), *Khajangdi* (M)

Distribution: North-Eastern States of India, Spain, Bolivia, Colombia, Peru, Argentina, Australia & Equatorial regions.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.
Small evergreen tree; leaves are muskily odorous, alternate, heart-shaped at base, ovate, acuminate; Flowers fragrant purple; fruits egg-shaped but pointed at both ends, orange red when ripe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-November

**Specimen examined:** Japhou. 30.6.2010. Roma-1235 (Plate-13-F).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

Fruits are taken as curry twice in a week in indigestion and intestinal trouble.

**Food:**

Fruits are taken as vegetable.

**Established report:** Ripe fruits are used to make soup, pickle and salads (Devi *et al.*, 2011b).


**Vern. Name:** Chingsoo (K & M)

**Distribution:** Manipur, India & All over Asia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and cultivated.

Deciduous tree; leaves imparipinnate, lanceolate, glabrous, tomentose when young, acuminate or caudate-acuminate; flowers small, yellowish-white in axillary and terminal panicles; fruits pod.

**Fls. & Frts.:** March-September

**Specimen examined:** Langthabal Khoupum. 10.8.2010. Roma-1243.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leave

**Medicinal uses:**

One glass of leaves decoction is given once a day for 10 days to treat skin diseases, dysentery and headache.

**Timber:**

Stem is used as timber.
Established report: Bark is used to treat ulcer, blood diseases, dysentery, piles and skin diseases. Leaf juice is applied to treat eye diseases (Sinha, 1996). Wood is good for furniture.


Vern. Name: Meitheipuinui (K), Sagolhidak (M)

Distribution: States of North-East India, Kashmir & throughout the temperate areas.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild in wasteland areas

Under shrub, stem erect, cylindrical, slightly woody; leaves ovate, acutely toothed, flowers axillar, corolla funnel shaped, usually purplish outside, 5-lobed, acuminate; fruits nodding.

Fls. & Frts.: August-April

Specimen examined: Monsang Pantha. 29.8.2010. Roma-1254 (Plate-14-A).

Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Root & leaves

Medicinal uses:

1. About 3-5 pieces of dried roots are made into paste with little bit of hing (Asfoetida sp.). This paste is used in abortion.
2. The juice of leaves is mixed with garlic juice and is applied to skin diseases.
3. Roots are used for treating toothache and leaf paste is used for tonsilitis.

Fish poison:

Leaves paste are also used as fish poison.

Established report: Plants are nacrotic anodyne. Leaves are used to treat muscular pain, rheumatic pain, skin diseases, boils, asthma, sore, snake-bite, jaundice, ulcer, bronchitis, pile etc (Pal & Jain, 1998). Seeds are used as fish-poison.

**Vern. Name:** *Gajar* (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & Tropical Asia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated

Annual herb; leaves 2-3 pinnate, ultimate, segments small, lanceolate; flowers white in compound umbel, rays, bracts and bractioles many, calyx teeth small, petals obovate emerginate, white, outer often radiant; fruits elliptic.

**Fls. & Frts.:** March- August

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Changning. 10.5.2009. Roma-743.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Tuber

**Medicinal uses:**

Tuber is used as blood purifier and it is taken in skin problem, kidney problem, urinary troubles and eye diseases.

**Food:**

Tuber is taken as vegetables.

**Established report:** Tuber is used for urinary trouble, stomach trouble and indigestion (Sinha, 1996). Tubers are used as vegetable.


**Vern. Name:** *Lalukok* (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout Manipur, India & South American countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild

Annual herb leaves alternate, ovate-lanceolate, pinnatifid or lyrate, terminal lobes broadly ovate, toothed; flowers in solitary capitula, yellow; fruits achene, pappus present.

**Fls. and Frts.:** February-October

**Specimen examined:** Heibunglok. 17.10.2010. Roma-1279. (Plate-14-B).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plants
Medicinal uses:
1. *Young shoots are given to mothers after child-birth as blood purifier.
2. *Paste of whole plants is applied on the head to relieve headache.

Food:
Shoots are taken as vegetable.

Established report: Paste of leaves is used to treat skin diseases (Sinha, 1996).

*New uses in ethnomedicine.

Vern. Name: *Heigri* (K & M)
Distribution: Throughout India, China, Malaysia, Myanmar, Sri-Lanka & Thailand.
Habitat: Terrestrial, wild, common in forest.

Tree with redish brown wood; leaves oblong-lanceolate with toothed margin; flowers white; fruits consisting of limbricating sepals with glutious pulp.

Fls. & Frts.: April-December

Ethnobotanical uses:
Parts used: Leaves, tender shoot & fruits
Medicinal uses:
1. One glass of tender shoot decoction is given once a day for 3 months in asthma.
2. Fruit juice is applied on body as emollient and to prevent skin diseases.

Hair lotion:
Pulp of fruits is used as hair lotion; it makes hair healthy and cures dandruff.

Fish poison:
Leaves are used as fish poison.

Food:
Fruits are used as Vegetable.

Established report: Bark and leaves are astringent. Fruits are used against abdominal pain and fruit juice is used as hair lotion (Das *et al.*, 2010).

**Vern. Name:** *Ha-angangba* (K), *Behra-hravur* (M)

**Distribution:** Whole Manipur, North-East India & tropical India.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated in jhums.

Climber with tuber direct on the base of the stem, stem winged, sometimes with scattered prickles at the base, bulbils large; leaves alternate, simple, deeply orbicular or ovate, cuspidate at the apex, cordate at the base; flowers unisexual, male flowers with zig-zag rachis sessile, stamens 6, fertile, short in central column around small pistilloide, female flowers axillary, solitary; fruits capsule, seeds winged.

**Fls. & Frts.:** August-February

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 17.10.2010. Roma-1282. (Plate-14-C).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & tuber

**Medicinal uses:**

Leaves are warmed on fire and applied to burns to relieve burning hot.

**Food:**

Tubers are eaten as vegetable.

**Established report:** Decoction of tuber is used in leprosy, piles and gonorrhea.


**Vern. Name:** *Harum* (K), *Behra* (M)

**Parts used:** Leaves & tubers

**Distribution:** Whole Manipur, North-East India & Atlantic coast of African-pacific Island.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in bushy areas and cultivated.

Annual climber with glabrous stem, tubers solitary, variable in size, usually small rounded, skin purplish-black, flesh white to lemon yellow; leaves
alternate, simple, broadly ovate-cordate, apex acuminate, lobes rounded; flowers greenish-purplish in axillary clusters on spike; fruits capsule, oblong.

**Fls. & Frts.:** August-February

**Specimen examined:** Bolongdai. 20.2.2011. Roma-1304.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Tuber & leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Boiled warm leaves are applied over the muscle pain and burnt areas to relieve affect.
2. Tubers are digestive.

**Food:**

Tubers are used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Tuber is given in dysentery, piles and applied externally to ulcers (Das *et al.*, 2010).


**Vern. Name:** Okha (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & Tropical & Sub-tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Climber, prickly towards the base, tuber single, very long, shape variable, skin yellow to purplish, leaves alternate, 3-5 foliate, glabrous or pubescent beneath, leaflets variable in shape and size, elliptic-lanceolate, ovate or obovate, acuminate; flowers unisexual, male flowers pale greenish, fragrant, female flowers inaxillary, pubescent in spike; fruits triquetrous, glabrous or pubescent.

**Fls. & Frts.:** August-February

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 5.4.2009. Roma-723.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Tuber & leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Boiled warm leaves are applied over to relieve muscle pain and in burn cases.
2. Tubers are digestive.
Food:

Tubers are used as vegetable.

Established report: Tuber are used as tonic and applied externally on swellings. Paste of bark is used for treating fistula (Pal & Jain, 1998).


Vern. Name: Heitup (K), Hetu (M)

Distribution: All over Manipur, Sikkim, Khasia- hills, Himalayan ranges & Tropical Asia.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild found in forest

Wild deciduous tree; leaves bifarious, ovate, oblong or obovate oblong or lanceolate, serrulate or nearly entire, base rounded; flowers pale yellow in head supported by involucral bracts, lanted, coherent at the base and puberulous outside, head pedunculate in terminal panicle, filament short, fruits gonophore and ovary glabrous, drupe globose.

Fls. & Frts.: June-February


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Fruits

Food:

Fruits are used as fruit and in making pickles.

Established report: Fruits are used as freshed fruit.


Vern. Name: Hawai-uri (K), Ngurbee (M)

Distribution: Throughout India, Myanmar, Thailand, Baitnam, Nepal & China.

Habitat: Terrestrial, Cultivated

Cultivated, annual, climbing, herb; leaves trifoliate, leaflets ovate, entire, acute; Flower white or purple; fruits pod.
**Fls. & Frts.:** June-February

**Specimen examined:** Chingmeirong. 31.7.2010. Roma-1236.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits

**Food:**

Pods are eaten as vegetable.

**Established report:** Pods are used as vegetable and seeds are taken as pulses.

---

122. *Drymaria cordata* Willd. ex Schult., Syst. Veg., ed. 15 bis. 5:406.1819;


**Vern. Name:** Tandan mana (K & M)

**Distribution:** India & tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in marshy areas.

Trailing herb with slender branches; leaves opposite decussate, short petioled, succulent, rounded-ovate, shallowly cordate; flowers small, white in axillary and terminal cymes; fruits capsule.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-March

**Specimen examined:** Ragailong. 10.12.2011. Roma-1420.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Above ground part

**Medicinal uses:**

*Juice (1-3 drops) of plants is used as nasal drop to treat sinusitis.

**Established report:** Plants are used in skin diseases and menstruation trouble.

*New uses in ethnobotany*

---


**Vern. Name:** Luipap (K), Tal (M)

**Distribution:** Manipur (common in Tamenglong District), Assam, Himalaya, Andaman, Myanmar, China, Malaysia, Vietnam.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild common in forest
Tree with milky latex; branches horizontally and drooping; leaves stout petioled, opposite, oblong, shortly acuminate, glabrous, entire; flowers white in terminal corymbs; fruits capsule.

**Fls. & Frts.**: March-August

**Specimen examined**: Tamenglong. 3.8.2009. Roma-760.

**Ethnobotanical uses**:

**Parts used**: Fruits & stem

**Food**:

Fruits are edible.

**Timber**:

Stem is used in various furniture items and in making local chapel.

**Established report**: Stem is used as timber.

---


**Vern. Name**: Shambal-lei (K), Sham-pan-rii (M)

**Distribution**: Throughout India, America, Bangladesh & Myanmar.

**Habitat**: Terrestrial, wild and domesticated in fencing.

Shrub with axillary thorns; leaves opposite, obovate or elliptic, entire or serrate above the middle, tapering at the base to the short petiole; flowers blue in terminal and axillary drooping panicles; fruits globose, yellow when ripe.

**Fls. & Frts.**: September-March

**Specimen examined**: Liwa Khullen. 25.7.2009. Roma-768.

**Ethnobotanical uses**:

**Parts used**: Whole plant

**Medicinal uses**:

Leaf paste is applied to cuts.

**Insecticide**:

Grained fresh fruits are used as insecticide.

**Biofencing**:

Plants are cultivated and used for biofencing.

**Established report**: Fruits are used as a source of nacrotic and used as insecticide (Das *et al.*, 2010).

**Vern. Name:** *Beangyil* (K), *Uchi-shumban* (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Sri Lanka, Nepal, Bhutan, Vietnam & China.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Diffused prostrate or erect much branched herb, hirsute; leaves variable in size and form, oblong, lanceolate or elliptic, subentire or distantly toothed, base cuneate, petiole slender; head globose, short peduncled, solitary or paired, axillary or terminal heterogamous, involucre bracts 2-seriate.

**Fls. & Frts.:** December- July

**Specimen examined:** Langthabal Khoupum. 3.5.2011. Roma-1401 (Plate-14-D).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Root & shoots

**Medicinal uses:**

1. About 10 ml of leaves juice with a spoon of honey and a glass of luke warm water is given twice a day for 10 days to cure cough, fever and given for 3 months for curing asthma.

2. 10 ml of leaves juice with a glass of milk is prescribed twice a day for a month to treat jaundice, gastritis, dysentery.

3. Decoction of whole plants is used to wash cuts and wounds.

4. 3-5 shoots are eaten as fresh or cooked every day to control hypertension.

5. Paste of root is applied to cattle externally as antiseptic to skin ulcers.

**Hair lotion:**

Whole plants are used as hair-lotion.

**Established report:** Plants are used to expelling intestinal worm, curing cough, asthma; leaves are used to relieve toothache; juice of plants is used to treat jaundice and fever (John, 2001).

**Vern. Name:** Tamleangthai (K), Mhotteh (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & all tropical Asia

**Habitat:** Cultivated in homegardens

Climbing shrub, spiny, bark smooth, shoots with shiny rust-coloured scales; leaves alternate, broadly elliptic to elliptic lanceolate with silvery-white scale beneath, apex rounded to acuminate; flowers straw-coloured with silvery-scales pedicels in axillary clusters; fruits ellipsoid, red or oranged red with whitish spots when ripe.

**Fls. and Frts.:** October-April

**Specimen examined:** Japhou. 15.4.2009. Roma-725 (Plate-14-E).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits & leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

*Leaf decoction (100 ml) is given, half a glass, twice a day for one month to treat paining of heals.*

**Food:**

Raw fruits are edible or cooked as sour curry.

**Established report:** Fruits are taken as fresh fruit and used to make jelly and local wine.

*New uses in ethnomedicine*


**Vern. Name:** Chorphon (K), Keruwm (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout Manipur, Assam, Khasia-hills, Chitagong, Singapore & Java.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and cultivated.
Tree, leaves ovate-lanceolate, glabrous; flowers white in axile leaves; fruit oblong, smooth.

**Fls. & Frts.**: August-April

**Specimen examined**: Rengkhu. 17.4.2011. Roma-1322.

**Ethnobotanical uses**:

**Parts used**: Young leaves & fruit

**Food**:

- Fruits are edible as fresh fruit.
- Young leaves are taken for its sour taste.
- Fruits are used to make local fruit wine.

**Established report**: Fruits are used as fresh fruit.

---


**Vern. Name**: *Elaichi-achouba* (K & M)

**Distribution**: Manipur, warmer regions of India & Sri-Lanka.

**Habitat**: Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

- Aromatic herb; leaves pubescent beneath, linear oblong; flowers white with violet sheath; fruits capsule.

**Fls. & Frts.**: October-March

**Specimen examined**: Tamenglong. 5.4.2009. Roma-724. (Plate-14-F).

**Ethnobotanical uses**:

**Parts used**: Flower buds

**Food**:

- Flower buds are used as spices
- *Flowers are taken as vegetable by the Kabui.*

**Established report**: Flowers buds and seeds are used as spices.

*New uses in ethnobotany*

**Vern. Name:** Tamik (K), Kangooman (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout Manipur, Sikim & Nepal.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild, domesticated.

Annual herb, aromatic; leaves opposite and decussate, elliptic-lanceolate, crenate, acuminate, serrate at the apex; flowers in terminal or panicled spike with closely imbricating bracts, dirty-white in colour; fruits nutlet.

**Fls. & Frts.:** April-October

**Specimen examined:** Keithelmanbi. 29.7.2010. Roma-1232 (Plate-15-A).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & flower

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Leaves and inflorescences (10 g) are given to cure cough, fever and bad breath.

2. Paste of leaves is applied on forehead to relieve headache.

**Spices:**

Leaves and inflorescence are used as spices to enhance the taste of many local dishes.

**Established report:** Juice of leaf is used to treat eye problem in Nepal, it is applied in cuts and wounds and leaves are used as mosquito repellant in Nepal (Manandhar, 1991).


**Vern. Name:** Lenglu (K), Jeerhiing (M)

**Distribution:** Manipur, Meghalaya, Khashi Hills, Bangladesh & Nepal.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.
Annual herb, aromatic; leaves oblong-lanceolate, crenate, acute, soft, hairy on both sides; flowers in spike, bracteates, bracts linear in whorl spike, purple or white in colour; fruits nutlet.

**Fls. and Frts.:** January-June


**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & flowers

**Medicinal uses:**

Boiled extract of flowers is used as gargle to cure tonsilitis, throat infection and other troubles.

**Spices:**

Leaves and flowers are used as spices in many local dishes mainly in 'Ironba', 'Ametpa' and 'Chagem'.

**Established report:** Decoction of plants is used in throat infection. Leaves and flowers are taken as spices (Devi *et al*., 2011a).

---


**Vern. Name:** Tekta (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Northeastern states of India & China.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and domesticated, common in foot hills.

Herb, aromatic, soft, pubescent tetra-angular etem; leaves opposite, decussate, ovate, acuminate, serrate at base; flowers in axillary and terminal spike, whorls few flowers and loosely arranged, bracts linear lanceolate, white; fruits nutlet.

**Fls. & Frts.:** September-March

**Specimen examined:** Khoupum. 14.11.2011. Roma-1394.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & flowers
Medicinal uses:
*Leaves and flowers are chewed as fresh, once a day for 10 days in case of mouth ulcer.

Spices:
Leaves and flowers are used as spices.

**Established report:** Leaves and flowers are taken as spices.

*New report in ethnobitany*


**Vern. Name:** Ching-Koudrangol (K), Kotangko (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Tropical Asia & Africa.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.
Annual herb; lower leaves lyrately pinnatifid or obovate, dentate or entire, upper leaves cauline, lanceolate, entire or sparsely dentate; flowers in capitulum, florets purple; fruits achenes.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-February


**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & tenders

**Medicinal uses:**
Leaves and shoots are taken as curry twice in a week as blood purifier.

**Food:**
Tender leaves are used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Leaf paste is applied in cuts and wounds and night blindness. Tender leaves are used in salad (Devi et al., 2011b).


**Vern. Name:** Kangkhin (K), Kuroh (M)

**Distribution:** Manipur, Assam, Central and Eastern Himalayas, Sikkim, Western Peninsular, Nepal & Most of the Tropical regions.
**Habitat:** Climber on large trees in forest, wild.

Large climber with angled and twisted stem; leaves- ends of rachis is tendril, bipinnate, two pairs, leaflets 2-4 pairs, obovate or oblong to elliptic emerginate; flowers small in spike or panicles, yellowish green; fruits large pod, constricted between the seeds, seeds discoid, round, hard, reddish brown.

**Fls. and Frts.:** June-April

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 24.11.2011. Roma-1405.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Seeds

**Medicinal uses:**

A spoon full of seed powder with half a glass of luke worm water is given once a day for 3 month to cure diabetes.

**Established report:** Paste of seeds is used in cuts and wounds, urinary trouble, swellings, etc. Fruits and bark are used as fish poison. Juice of bark is applied externally to relieve ulcers (Pal & Jain,1998).


**Vern. Name:** Lai-utong (K), Leh-tongka & M)

**Distribution:** North-Eastern India, North -America, Euracia, West Indes, South-America & Chile.

**Habitat:** Commonly found in marshy areas.

Rhizome deep, stem ridge with internodes, sheaths green, teeth thin, margin dentate; sporangiophores orbicular or oblong; sporangia oblong, brownish.

**Fertile period:** July-November

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 8.7.2011. Roma-1340 (Plate-15-D).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plant

**Medicinal Uses:**

1. Extract of whole plant is used as refrigerant and it is used in gonorrhoea.

2. Paste of plants is applied to relief joint pain.
3. Paste of plants is also applied directly to cure skin diseases and cuts.

Established report: Plants are used to make lotion and shampoo.


Vern. Name: *Maruaidaimei* (K), *Bechii-enhnam* (M)

Distribution: Throughout India, America & tropical countries

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

Perennial herb with fusiform roots; stem deeply striate; leaves simple, oblanceolate, spatulate, spinous-toothed at the margin, alternate at the base, palmatifid; flowers white in oblong-cylindrical umbel, bracts spinacious, stellate-pubescent; calyx teeth, ridge, acute; petals white; fruits ellipsoid.

Fls. & Frts.: October-March

Specimen examined: Langthabal Khoupum. 4.3.2009. Roma-710

Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves & flowers

Medicinal uses:

1. Leaves (10 g) are eaten as fresh or cooked for long time to control hypertension and indigestion.

2. Leaf juice is applied on fracture, sprain & muscle pain. in both tribes.

Spices:

Leaves are used as condiment in all varieties of food item.

Established report: Paste of leaves is used for headache and roots are used to treat diuretic (Sinha, 1996).


Vern. Name: *Kurao* (K & M)

Distribution: Nort-East states of India, Foot hills of Himalaya, Myanmar, Java & Sri-Lanka

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild found in forest and roadside.

Tree deciduous, stem prickly; leaves pinnately trifoliate, stout, glabrous, broad; axillary racemes with long peduncle; flower white; fruit pod.

Fls. & Frts.: February-June
**Specimen examined:** Langthabal Khoupum. 25.5.2010. Roma-1212.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Stem & flowers

**Socio-religious:**

A piece of stem (white flowered) is hanged on the neck to protect the person from evil effect (the children of Kabui Naga people as well as valley people).

**Ornamental:**

Flowers are used for decoration.

**Established report:** Barks and prickles are used against evil spirit, bark and root juice is applied in wounds (Khare, 2004).

---


**Vern. Name:** *Sileima* (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Assam, Sikkim, Khasia-hills, Bhutan & Bangladesh.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Tree; leaves oblong-lanceolate, acuminate, entire; flowers white in axillary or terminal corymbose panicle cyme; fruits berry, oblong.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-November

**Specimen examined:** Langthabal Khoupum. 19.9.2011. Roma-1378.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits

**Food:**

Fruits are edible.

**Timber:**

Stem is used to make house and other furnitures

**Established report:** Ripen fruits are taken as fresh fruit.

**Vern. Name:** Lianglei (K), Riíngengrii (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Northeastern states of India, Nepal & Sri Lanka.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Perennial herb, branched with glabrous stem; leaves opposite, stout petiole, lanceolate or elliptic-lanceolate, margin serrate; flowers in small head, phyllarius linear oblong, glabrous, corolla blue; fruits achene, pappus with filiform.

**Fls. & Frts.:** July-November

**Specimen examined:** Keithelmanbi. 11.10.2010. Roma-1277. (Plate-15-E).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

1. The burning sensation in the stomach due to excessive intake of chilly can be relieved by taking fresh leaves (3-5).

2. Paste of leaves is used in cuts and skin diseases.

**Socioreligious:**

This plant is used in socio-religious functions of Kabui community.

**Established report:** Leaves are used in stomach ulcer and other stomach problem (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** Japan napi (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over India, Bangladesh & Myanmar.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Annual herb; leaves opposite, ovate or rhomboid-ovate, petiole crenate, base cuneate, flowers white or bluish purple in heads; fruits achene, pappus.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-December

**Specimen examined:** Nungtek. 27.7.2011. Roma-1355.
Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves

Medicinal uses:

1. Paste of leaves is applied on cuts and wounds.
2. Juice of leaves is used to treat skin diseases.

Established report: Paste of leaves is applied in cuts and wounds (Sumitra et al., 2009).


Vern. Name: *Kambhirei* (K & M)

Distribution: Throughout India & other tropic countries of Asia

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild.

Wild shrub, profusely branching, pubescent; leaves opposite, ovate-deltoid, acuminate, sparingly serrate, tapering to short petiole, pubescent; flowers odorous, white in head; fruits achene, pappus, white.

Fls. & Frts.: June-November


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Whole plants

Medicinal uses:

Paste of leaves is applied on fresh cuts.

Fish poison:

Leaves are used as fish poison.

Fire wood:

Dried plants are burnt as firewood.

Established report: Leaves are used in cuts and wounds. Plant is diuretic, antiscorbutic (Sinha, 1996).

**Vern. Name:** Pakhang-leiton (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Tropical and sub-tropical regions of India & tropical countries of Asia

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild common in wasteland areas

Herb, prostrate with erect branches; leaves opposite, elliptic-ovate, acute, stipulate; flowers male florets surrounding a solitary, female enclosed within involucres; fruits capsule, minute.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-December

**Specimen examined:** Langthabal Khoupum. 26.10.2010. Roma-1290.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Shoot

**Medicinal uses:**

Shoots and leaves (10-30 g) are given once a day for 10 days as medicine in stomach ulcer.

**Food:**

Shoots are taken as vegetable.

**Established report:** Plants are used to treat colic, dysentery, urinary tract problem and latex is used in ringworm (Sinha, 1996). Shoots are taken as vegetable.


**Vern. Name:** Thingmaning (K), Sijou (M)

**Distribution:** Hill districts of Manipur, Khasia, Naga & Jaintia Hills, Assam, Sri-Lanka & Fiji Island.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in hills.

Shrub; leaves serrate, narrowly oblong, caudate, acuminate, serrulate, coriaceous; flowers small, sessile, white, axillary; fruits capsule, globose.

**Fls. & Frts.:** July-December

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 25.10.2010. Roma-1285. (Plate-15-F).
Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves

Spices:

Leaves are used as spices in meat curries.

Established report: Leaves are taken as spices (Singh, 1990).


Vern. Name: *Thangjing* (K), *Thangching* (M)

Distribution: All over Manipur, Assam, Eastern Bengal, Kashmir & China.

Habitat: Aquatic, cultivated in ponds and lakes.

Aquatic herb, very prickly; leaves large orbicular, floating, pink or purple beneath with stout recurved prickles, green glabrous with prickle above; flowers violet or blue, epigynous; fruits spongy berry covered with stout spines, seeds large arollate, endosperm mealy.

Fls. & Frts.: April-December


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Young leaves, petiole & fruit

Food:

Young leaves, leafstalk and fruits are eaten as vegetable.

Fruits are favourite food of Manipuries in many varieties of dishes.

Established report: Fruits are used as vegetable (Devi *et al*., 2011b).


Vern. Name: *Heireet* (K), *Thechang* (M)

Distribution: All over Manipur and North-Eastern states of India & Tropical Asia

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild in forest.
Wild tree, young shoots hirsute, leaves elliptic, oblong or lanceolate, scabrid on both surface or pubescent beneath the leaf base, one side of lamella base is compressed; flowers in hypanthodium; fruits globose red when ripe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** May-October

**Specimen examined:** Keithelmanbi. 26.6.2010. Roma-1222. (Plate-16-A).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits & tender shoots

**Food:**

- Fruits are edible and used as fresh fruit.
- *Tendre shoots are taken as vegetable.

**Established report:** Ripen fruits are taken as fresh fruit (Devi *et al.*, 2012).

*New report in ethnobotany*


**Vern. Name:** **Heibong** (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & Myanmar.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Deciduous tree, young parts pubescent, bark greenish brown; leaves ovate elliptic, ovate-oblong or oblong lanceolate, entire, bluntly acuminate, membranous, glabrous with minute dots on the lower surface; petiolate, stipule small, ovate, lanceolate; receptacles peduncled in short panicked fascicles from the trunk and large branches, sometimes axillary, subglobose or pyriform.; male flowers perianth 3-5 lobed; female flowers Perianth 4-5 lobed, style subterminal.

**Fls. & Frts.:** January-October

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 17.7.2010. Roma-1226.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

Young fruits (1-3) are given in a day for 5 days to cure dysentery.

**Food:**

Young leaves and young fruits are used as vegetables.
Ripen fruits are eaten as fresh fruit.

**Established report:** Fruits are taken as fresh fruits (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** Ashi-heibong (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Tropical & sub-tropical countries of the world.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Small tree with hollow branchlets, bark thin greenish grey often warty with horizontal wrinkles; leaves opposite, obovate oblong, elliptic or dentate, acute or shortly acuminate, serrate or dentate, rarely entire, subcoriaceous, hairy and scabrid above, hispid, ascending base obtuse, rounded or subcordate, stipules ovate, lanceolate, pubescent externally, numerous in one set, receptacles containing fall flowers.

**Fls. & Frts.:** January-September

**Specimen examined:** Tamei. 15.3.2010. Roma-1203.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Root, bark, leaves & fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

1. A glass of decoction of tender shoot with a spoon of honey and powder of 3 seeds of *Piper longum* is prescribed once a day for a week to cure cough and for 3 months in asthma.

2. About 10 ml of root juice with a glass of rice-water (water after washing rice) is given to check intestinal disorder.

3. The latex is applied on ringworm, skin infections boils and ulcers.

**Food:**

Leaves are used to ferment the boiled soyabean, which is a favourite dish of the Manipuris.

Fruits are eaten as fresh food.

**Established report:** Dried fruit powder is boiled in water and given to disperse swollen, inflamed lymph gland; latex is given orally to treat dysentery, diarrhoea and to relieve headache (Khare, 2004).
147.  **Ficus palmata** Forsk., Fl. Aegypt.-Arab. 179.1775; *F. palmate* Roxb., Hort. Bengal. [103]; Fl. Ind. 3:529. (Moraceae)

**Vern. Name:** *Bubang* (K), *Heiba* (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur and North-Eastern India & Bangladesh.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Tree, glabrous, stipulately pubescent, twigs lenticellate, bark brownish grey, reticulately fissured vertically, inside light brown; leaves ovate, ovate-oblong or oval, entire margin slightly recurved, acuminate; stipulate, pubescent, ovate lanceolate; male flowers perianth gamophyllous, mouth oblique or split, gall and female flower gamophyllous, receptacle axillary, solitary or paired or inpeduncle clusters on the stem; fruit subglobose, depressed, yellow when ripe, achene obovoid.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-April

**Specimen examined:** Heibunglok. 10.7.2010. Roma-1223. (Plate-16-B).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Young shoots & fruits

**Food:**

Young shoots are used as vegetable.

Fruits are taken as fresh fruit.

**Established report:** Tender shoots are consumed as vegetable (Devi *et al.*, 2011b).

148.  **Ficus tjakela** Burm., Hook. f., Fl. Brit. Ind. 5:514.1890. (Moraceae)

**Vern. Name:** *Tarung* (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout Manipur

**Habitat:** Terrestrial. Wild and domesticated

Deciduous tree; leaves coriaceous, petiole long, oval or ovate, acuminate, entire slightly undulate, base broad rounded or sub-truncate, leaf scales of young branches large, linear-lanceolate; male flowers few only near the mouth of the receptacle and female flowers are in inner parts.

**Fls. & Frts.:** May-October

**Specimen examined:** Japhou. 5.3.2011. Roma-1311. (Plate-16-C).
Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves & tender

Medicinal uses:

*Tender shoots are given as curry thrice in a week to cure dysentery and as appetizer.

Food:

Tender shoots are used as vegetable.

Established report: Tender shoots and young leaves are taken as vegetable (Devi et al., 2011b).

*New report in ethnobotany


Vern. Name: Heitroi (K), Therie (M)

Distribution: India, tropical and sub-tropical Africa, S.E. Assia & Malaysia.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild.

Tree deciduous, thorny at axil; leaves usually obovate, crenate; flowers in racemes; fruits with short persistent style.

Fls. & Frts.: February-July


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Whole plant

Timber:

The timber is very hard, long time period can live in moist and wet conditions, so it is used to make agricultural implements.

Fire wood:

Whole parts are used for firewood.

Established report: Stem is used for furniture.


Vern. Name: Heitroi (K & M)

Distribution: India, tropical & sub-tropical Africa.
**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Tree, Deciduous; leaves ovate to lanceolate, crenate, serrate, acuminate; flowers in axillary raceme with slender pedicles; fruits sub-globose.

**Fls. & Frts.:** July-February

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Changning, 18.12.2010. Roma-1292.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruit & stem

**Timber:**

The timber is very hard, can remain in moist and wet conditions for a long period, so it is used to make agricultural implements. Stem is used for furniture, as fire wood and to make charcoal.

**Food:**

Fruits are edible.

**Established report:** Fruits are edible. Stem is used as timber.

---


**Vern. Name:** *Ching-hei* (K & M)

**Distribution:** Hills of Manipur, Northeastern states of India, Concan & Canara.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild common in hills.

Wild, tree; obovate, oblong-oblanceolate, acute, acuminate; male flowers solitary in terminal and female flowers solitary in terminals; fruits pulp, spherical, red when ripe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** February-August

**Specimen examined:** Luinuomphai. 3.8.2011. Roma-1364. (Plate-16-D).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruit

**Food:**

*Fruits are taken as fresh fruit.

**Established report:** Fruits are edible. Fruits are used for stimulating digestive power and for treating mouth infections (Khare, 2004).

*New uses in ethnobotany*

**Vern. Name:** *Phuangthai* (K), *Heibung* (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Bangladesh, Myanmar, Tropical Asia & Africa.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

Wild deciduous tree with greyish brown bark; leaves elliptic, lanceolate, acute; Male flowers axillary or terminal in fascicles of 3-8, short pedicels, female flowers in terminal fascicles of 2-5; fruits berry globular.

**Fls. & Frts.** October-May

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 14.11.2009. Roma-793. (Plate-16-E).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Paste of boiled fruits is applied on bone fracture and muscle pain.
2. Two spoons of boiled fruit paste mixed with equal amount of molasses is given twice a day for digestion.

**Food:**

Fruit is taken as sour curry with sugar and molasses.

**Established report:** Fruit decoction is used in dysentery, decoction of bark is also used in blood dysentery. Fruits are sued as sore taste in curry (Devi *et al.*, 2011a).


**Vern. Name:** *Kaboklei* (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Nepal, Thailand & China.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Shrub, bushy; leaves opposite or ternately whorled, obovate, oblanceolate or nearly lanceolate, acute, tapering below the middle to a short petiole, shining, dark green, glabrous except the shortly glandular axils; flower large, white tunning to yellow, solitary very fragrant, often double, terminal at the forks of branches or becoming lateral by displacement or single shoots, peduncle short; fruits berry, ellipsoid, orange, distinctly ribbed.
Fls. & Frts.: February-October


Ethnobotanical uses:
Parts used: Whole plant

Ornamental:
It is cultivated as ornamental in gardens.

Repelant:
Flowers are put on bed and between cloths to expel bad bug, mice and other small insects.

Established report: It is cultivated as ornamental and for its sweet smell.


Vern. Name: Nung-hawai (K), Lohliejangbi (M)

Distribution: Throughout India & Tropical countries.

Habitat: Cultivated in jhums and home gardens

Herb, annual, rusty hairy; leaves pinnately 3-foliate, hairy, stipule ovate, acuminate, hirsute; flowers in raceme, sessile with few congested flowers; fruits pod, seed ellipsoid to ovoid compressed.

Fls. & Frts.: June-December


Ethnobotanical uses:
Parts used: Whole plant

Food:
Fresh seeds are used as vegetable.

Dried seeds are used to make fermented food called 'hawaijar'.

Detergent:
Ash of dried plants is used to take 'khari' (ash is mixed with water and stand for 1-3 hrs, this water is used as *khari*) which is used to make traditional dish Called 'Ooti' and used as detergent.

Established report: Seeds are used as pulses and powder of seeds is consumed instead of milk. Beans are prescribed for treating diabetes, decoction of bark is astringent (Sinha, 1996).

**Vern. Name:** Wang (K), Minvong (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Myanmar & Malaysia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in forest.

Tree, wild, quadrangular, greyish green, lenticellate, leaf scars prominent, leaves opposite, cordate, ovate or broadly ovate, a, greyish green, flower yellow with brown, fruit drupe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** March-August

**Specimen examined:** Khongsang. 5.4 2011. Roma-1322. (Plate-16-F).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves, stem & root

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Leaf paste is applied on snake bite and is applied on the head to relieve high fever.
2. Leaf decoction (1 spoon) twice a day for a week is given to gonorrhea and cough
3. 50 ml of root decoction is given to check fever.

**Timber:**

The soft white wood is used for making utensils, other decorative items and furnitures.

**Established report:** Fresh leaves and root is used to treat cough, gonorrhoea, headache, ulcers etc. Fruit decoction is used in fever. Leaves are used in snake-bite and scorpio-sting. Flowers are applied to blood related diseases (Das *et al.*, 2010).


**Vern. Name:** Phunil (K & M)

**Distribution:** India & warm temperate countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.
Small herb leaves alternate, sessile oblong, spatulate, glaucous on both sides; capitula golden-yellow in dense terminal ends; fruits achenes oblong.

**Fls. & Frts.:** August-December

**Specimen examined:** Heibunglok. 15.8.2011. Roma-1374. (Plate-5-F).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & tenders

**Medicinal uses:**

*It is given as curry, 5-7 times in a week to control diabetes.

**Food:**

Leaves and tender shoots are taken as vegetable.

**Established report:** Paste of leaves and stem is put on the forehead to reduce headache (Das *et al.*, 2010). It is used as vegetable.

*New uses in ethnomedicine*


**Vern. Name:** Leikham (K), Kham (M)

**Distribution:** Manipur, Assam, Tripura & Tropics of the world.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Shrub, evergreen; leaves oblong or lanceolate, glabrous, narrowed cuneate at the base and acuminate at the apex, margin revolute; flowers solitary, axillary, greenish white.

**Fls. and Frts.:** April-December (Rare)

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 17.11.2011. Roma-1395. (Plate-17-A).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Smoke of leaves protect skin diseases like measles, scabies etc.
2. Smoke is given to the women to be mothers to relieve labour pain in both the tribes.
3. *Ash of leaves is applied for protection from nasal infection of newly born baby of Monsang Tribe.

**Socio-religious:**

Kabui people hang leaves in the house for protection from evil spirit and use in pujas.

**Established report:** Boiled extract of leaves are used in bath for new born babies and it is used against skin diseases (Singh, 1990).

**New uses in ethnobotany**


**Vern. Name:** Lasing (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & tropical Asia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

Shrub with slender branches; leaves deeply palmate with obovate or oblong segments; bracteole cordate, ovate, acute; epicalyx cordate at the base; flower yellow, calyx cupular, corolla campanulate, yellow with a purple centre; fruits capsule to globular, seeds with a dense covering of long wooly hairs and a fine short lomentum.

**Fls. & Frts.:** February-August

**Specimen examined:** Heibunglok. 15.12.2011. Roma-1422.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Seed hair

**Fibre:**

Cotton is used as common fibrous plant. Seed hair is used as yarn, cushions and quilts.

**Established report:** Seed hairs are used to make many kinds of fibrous material (Singh, 1990).

**Vern. Name:** Loklei (K), Dang-khiing (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & tropical Asia.

**Habitat:** Commonly found in swampy areas.

Perennial herb, stout; leaves large with long clasping sheaths, oblong, lanceolate, apex acuminate, glabrous above sparsely pubescent beneath and midrib large; flowers bractiata, white with yellow centre, fragrant in oblong spike, petiole long, corolla segmented linear; fruits capsule, oblong, glabrous, yellow inside.

**Fls. & Frts.:** July-December

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 8.8.2010. Roma-1240. (Plate-17-B).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Rhizomes & Flowers

**Spices:**

Rhizome is used as spices

**Ornamental:**

Flowers are used as hair decoration and cultivated as ornamental.

**Established report:** Rhizomes are used as a febrifuge and is considered as antirheumatic. Paste of leaves and rhizome is applied on forehead to relieve headache and also applied on swellings. Plants are cultivated for decoration of the gardens (John, 2001).


**Vern. Name:** Takhetlei-angangba (K), Aediirie (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Malesia, tropical & subtropical regions of Asia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

Perennial herb, stout; leaves large with long clasping sheaths, oblong, lanceolate, apex acuminate, glabrous above sparsely pubescent beneath and midrib large; flowers bracteate, red, fragrant in oblong spike, petiole long, corolla segmented linear; fruits capsule, oblong, glabrous, yellow inside.

**Fls. & Frts.:** July-December

Ethnobotanical uses:
Parts used: Rhizomes & Flowers

Medicinal used:
A half glass of decoction of root is given once a day for 10 days to cure leucorrhoea.

Spices:
Rhizomes are used as spices.

Ornamental:
Flowers are used as hair decoration and are cultivated as ornamental.

Established report: Rhizomes are used as a febrifuge and is considered as antirheumatic. Paste of leaves and rhizome is applied on forehead to relieve headache and applied on swellings (John, 2001).


Vern. Name: Takhetlei (K), Aediirie (M)

Distribution: Throughout India & tropical Asia.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

Perennial herb, stout; leaves large with long clasping sheaths, oblong, lanceolate, apex acuminate, glabrous above sparsely pubescent beneath and midrib large; flowers bracteate, yellow, fragrant in oblong spike, petiole long, corolla segmented linear; fruits capsule, oblong, glabrous, yellow inside.

Fls. & Frts.: July-December


Ethnobotanical uses:
Parts used: Rhizomes & Flowers

Spices:
Rhizome is used as spices

Ornamental:
Flowers are used as hair decoration and cultivated as ornamental.
**Established report:** Rhizomes are used as a febrifuge and is considered as antirheumatic. Paste of leaves and rhizome is applied on forehead to relieve headache and applied on swellings. Plants are cultivated for decoration of the garden.


**Vern. Name:** Langban-koukha (K), Napu-rii & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in wastelands

Herb; leaves opposite, elliptic-oblong, acute-acuminate, cuneate at base; flowers sessile in axillary cymose, dense, greenish-white; fruits capsule, sparsely hairy.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-December

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 6.6.2009. Roma-753.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plant

**Medicinal uses:**

100 ml of decoction of the whole plant is given twice a day for 1 month to treat jaundice and for a week in fever.

**Established report:** Decoction of plants is given with common salt to treat fever and it is used orally with pepper to children in blood dysentery. Paste of leaves is applied with mustard oil in allergic itching and it is also applied on bleeding piles (Khare, 2004).


**Vern. Name:** Numitlei (K), Kurang-rii & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.
Annual herb with rough, hairy stem; leaves alternate with long-stalked, broadly ovate to cordate, roughly pubescent on both surface; flowers in heads, ray florates yellow, disc florates brownish-purple; fruits achenes, ovoid-compressed black when ripe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** February-July

**Specimen examined:** Nungtek. 27.7.2011. Roma-1357.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Root & seeds

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Root decoction (50 ml) is given once a day for 10 days to strengthen teeth and cure toothache.
2. Seed oil is used as cooking oil and also for treating the hypertension, kidney trouble and diabetes.

**Ornament:**

It is cultivated as ornamental plant.

**Established report:** Leaves are used to treat skin diseases, itching, ulcer, leprosy, asthma, brochitis, burning sensation in the vagina, urinary discharges, anaemia. Root is used to strengthen teeth and cure toothache. Flowers are used to treat piles, ophthalmia and kidney diseases (John, 2001).


**Vern. Name:** Tanabanjungpai (K), Inthour (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Tropical Asia & Africa.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Annual herb with branches, slender glabrous or prickly stem; lower leaves cordate, upper leaves deeply palmate, 5-7 lobed, oblong-lanceolate, denticulate; flowers solitary in the axils of upper leaves, yellow with creamson centre or deep red; fruits capsule, globose to ovoid, acuminate, glabrous.

**Fls. and Frts.:** August-January

**Specimen examined:** Japhou. 24.9.2009. Roma-784.
Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Seeds and leaves

Medicinal uses:

Juice of leaves (10-20 ml) with a spoon of honey is used twice a day for a week to treat constipation and indigestion.

Food:

Fermented boiled seeds are used as blood purifier by the Kabui people of Tamenglong district.

Leaves are used as vegetable.

Established report: Flowers are used in constipation and gastritis and leaves are used in throat infection and as blood purifier (Devi et al., 2011a).


Vern. Name: Jubakusum (K & M)

Distribution: Throughout India, China, Japan & Nepal.

Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated in fencings

Cultivated, ornamental, evergreen shrub; leaves ovate, acuminate, serrate, glabrous or with few scattered hairs on the veins beneath; flower axillary, solitary, single or double, red orange, pink, yellow, crimson etc., upper axils short or long jointed spreading or declined peduncles; epicalyx segmented 5-10, free, laceolate.

Fls. & Frts.: Whole year

Specimen examined: Chingmeirong. 12.1 2010. 799.

Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves, flower & root

Medicinal uses:

1. Fresh flower (10 g) is prescribed as a means of contraceptive.
2. Paste of roots is used to treat swelling and boils.

Hair lotion:

Extract of leaves is used as hair lotion.
Dye:

Flowers are used for dyeing of light yellow colour.

Established report: Paste of flowers is applied on cuts and wounds to stop bleeding. Roots are used in cough, gonorrhoea etc. and buds are useful in treatment of vaginal and uterine discharge (Pal & Jain, 1998).


**Vern. Name:** Silo-sougri (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, China & Japan.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Strong annual shrub having broad clump with branches from base; leaves suborbicular to elliptic, serrate, lower leaves ovate, undivided, upper leaves palmate, 3-5 lobed, narrowly triangular to linear, acute; flower solitary, axillary, purple, epicalyx segmented free; calyx red, fleshy, accrescent; corolla yellow; fruits capsule, red, ovoid, pubescent.

**Fls. & Frts.:** September-February

**Specimen examined:** Langthabal Khoupum. 7.5.2009. Roma-736.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

A glass of boiled extract of matured calyx is given once a day for 10 days for treating indigestion.

**Food:**

Leaves and matured calyx are used as vegetable.

Matured calyx is preserved for its sour taste to be used once the season is over.

**Fibre:**

Bark is also used instead of jute.

Established report: Calyx is used to prepare cooling, refreshing beverage which aids digestion and is useful for treating bilious condition (Pal & Jain, 1998).

**Vern. Name:** *Jubakusum-thondaba* (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, China, Japan & Nepal.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Bush shrub with slender dropping branches, cultivated; leaves narrowly ovate, dentate; flowers red, pink, yellow, axillary, solitary; calyx spathaceous; petals deepy laciniate, reflexed; staminal tube long, slender, pendulous.

**Flowering:** Whole year

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 1.11.2011. 1388.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves, flower & root

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Fresh flower (10 g) is prescribed as a means of contraceptive.
2. Paste of roots is used to treat boils.

**Hair-lotion:**

Extract of leaves is used as hair lotion.

**Dye:**

Flowers are used for dyeing of light yellow colour.

**Biofencing:**

Plants are cultivated as biofencing.

**Established report:** It is cultivated as ornament.


**Vern. Name:** *Kharum leishok* (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over India, Central Himalya-range, China & South America.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Wild, shrub, branched, branchlets quadrangular green, puberulous, glabrous grey at mature; leaves ovate, shallowly dentate or crenate serrate along margin, rounded pubescent on both surface; axillary cyme; flower bright orange; fruit drupe.
Fls. & Frts.: July-February

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 14.6.2011. Roma-1337. (Plate-17-C).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plant

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Leaf decoction (20-50 ml) is taken twice a day before meals as blood purifier.
2. Paste of leaves is applied in rheumatic arthritis.

**Socio-religious:**

Flowers are offered to God by the Kabui tribe.

**Hairlotion:**

Whole plant is used as hair lotion.

**Established report:** Decoction of leaves is given for fever and urinary trouble. Decoction of leaves is also used to control hypertension and leaves are used in hair lotion (Sinha, 1996).

**Vern. Name:** Toningkhok (K), Topa-nhengkung (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Sikkim, Khasia-hills, China & Japan.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and cultivated.

Herb with copiously branching root-stock leaves ovate, cordate, acuminate, membranous, gland dotted, pubescent when young; flowers minute in dense spike with partially connate bracts, fruits capsule, subglobose.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-October

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 23.7.2009. Roma-766. (Plate-17-D).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plants

**Spices:**

Whole plants are used as spices and vegetable.

**Established report:** Plants are used as spices. Leaves are used in measles, dysentery, gonorrhoea and skin trouble (Sinha, 1996).

**Vern. Name:** Khuchang (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & South-east Asia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated

Annual herb; leaves alternate, narrowly lanceolate, deeply serrate, acuminate, petiole glandular; flowers varied colours, solitary or fascicled, short petiole; fruits capsule, tomentoes, loculicidal.

**Flowering & fruiting:** April-August

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Changning. 28.8.2010. Roma-1256. (Plate-17-E).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & flowers

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Paste of leaves or flowers is used to cure rotten nails.
2. Juice of whole plants is used externally to relieve joint pains.

**Ornamental:**

Plants are cultivated as ornamental.

**Established report:** Juice of leaves is used in cataract, diuretics and externally to joint pain and in ulcers (John, 2001).


**Vern. Name:** Ee (K), Mindii (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout Manipur, Northeastern satates of India, Punjap & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in grasslands.

Perennial grass, variable in size, widely creeping nodes with erect white hairs; leaves variable, culm narrowed towards the base, tapering to acuminate tip, scabrid at the margin, ciliate, silky at the back, linear or linear-lanceolate, acuminate; flowers in spikelet panicles; fruits Caryopsis, oblong.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-February

**Specimen examined:** Dailong. 16.2.2011. Roma-1302.
Ethnobotanical uses:
Parts used: Above ground parts

Roofing:
Leaves are used to make roof of the houses.

Biofencing:
Leaves are used to make fencing.

Established report: Leaves are used to make roof and fencing.

172. *Ipomoea aquatica* Forssk., Fl. Aegypt. Arab. 44.1775; Clarke in Hook. f., Fl. Brit. Ind. 2:201.1885; Kanjilal et al., Fl. Assam 3:348.1939. (Convolvulaceae)

Vern. Name: Kolamani (K & M)

Distribution: Throughout India, Africa, Australia, Bangladesh & Tropical Asia.

Habitat: Aquatic, wild common in ponds and marshy areas.

Wild herb with perennating root stock, stem fistul ar, spongy, rooting at the nodes with vertical breathing roots, leaves glabrous, variable in shape and size, linear to ovate, truncate, cordate; flowers in cymes, bracts minute, pinkish white, funnel shaped; fruits capsule, ovoid to globose.

Fls. & Frts.: July-February


Ethnobotanical uses:
Parts used: Young leaves & shoots

Food:

Young leaves and shoots are used as vegetable.

Established report: Juice of leaves is applied against small pox. Plant juice is given in jaundice and food poisoning. Shoots are used as vegetable (Devi et al., 2011b).


Vern. Name: Mangra (K), Nasungberhaa (M)

Distribution: Throughout India, America & Tropical Countries.

Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated in jhum fields.
Annual, cultivated, herb with fusiform or elongated tubers, rooting at
the nodes, stem green or tinged with purple, glabrous; leaves broadly ovate to
orbicular, entire or deeply 3-7 palmately lobed, cordate to truncate at the base;
flowers purple in axillary cymes, bracts caduceus, funnel shaped; fruits capsule
ovoid.

**Fls. & Frts.**: October-February


**Ethnobotanical uses**:

**Parts used**: Leaves & tubers

**Medicinal uses**:

1. Warm leaves are applied on the boils to remove pus mixed with blood.
2. Tuberous roots (10-20 g) are given everyday to unhealthy persons to
   promote blood circulation.

**Food**:

Tubers are used as vegetable.

**Established report**: Tubers are edible. Leaves are used in burn cases (Devi *et al.*, 2011a).


**Vern. Name**: *Khoiju* (K & M)

**Distribution**: India, Myanmar, Laos, Nepal, Bhutan, Cambodia, China, Thailand &
Vietnam.

**Habitat**: Terrestrial, wild.

Perennial wild, tall shrub with densely tomentose erect branches; leaves
opposite or whorls, lanceolate, serrate, acuminate, tomentose or hispid on both
surface; flowers in spike or panicles, bracts lower folioaceous, gradually reducing
in size; fruits nutlets.

**Fls. & Frts.**: August-March

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Inflorescence

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Smoke released during burning is fumigant, antiseptic and insect repellant. Exposures of body to this smoke cure skin diseases like scabise, irritation, etc.

2. Ash of this plant is applied on forehead against headache.

**Socio-religious:**

Inflorescence associate with leaves of *Gonoithelamus sesquipedalis* are used in many cultural rituals as burning of them in combination is believed to drive away evil spirit by both the tribes.

**Established report:** Inflorescence is used as insecticide. Meitei community uses it in magico religious belief. Young shoots are taken as vegetable with fish, pork or other meats in Assam. Decoction of root is given to cure jaundice (Devi, 2010).


**Vern. Name:** Tengnou (K), Ching-leen & M

**Distribution:** Throughout India & tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and domesticated in fencings and road sides.

- Glabrous shrub, trunk corky when old, branches terete, fleshy; leaves alternate, deciduous, crowded at the end of branches, obovate-spathulate or obovate- oblong base tapering; flowers in cymes, solitary or two, central flowers male, lateral ones bisexual; fruit capsule.

**Fis. & Frts.:** April-December

**Specimen examined:** Tamei. 5.12.2009. Roma-797.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** whole plant

**Medicinal uses:**

Boiled leaves are applied to piles, itching and swellings.

**Biofencing:**

Plants are cultivated as biofencing around the house and agricultural fields.
Established report: Juice of plant is used in rheumatism, skin diseases and leaf extract is used against toothache. Stem juice is applied in burns (Pal & Jain, 1998).


Vern. Name: *Heijuga* (K), *Mingkha* (M)

Distribution: All over Manipur, Khasi-hills, Nilgiri-hills & Temperate regions of Asia.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild in forest.

Tree, leaves imparipinnate thickly tomentose when young, leaflets 5-13, subsessile, opposite or subopposite, elliptic oblong, often oblique usually entire, acute or acuminate coreaceous, base rounded or obtuse; male catkin green often in pair, bracts stalked, oblong lobed; fruit ovoid glabrous or pubescent, green with yellow dots.

Fls. & Frts.: August-March


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves, stem & fruits

Fish poison:

Leaves are used as fish poison.

Timber:

Stem is high quality wood to make furniture and household materials.

Food:

Fruits are eaten as fruit.

Established report: Fruits are edible. Stem is used to make good furnitures.


Vern. Name: *Khimpuinui* (K), *Chiipar* (M)

Distribution: Throughout India & Tropical countries.
**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

Bushy shrub; leaves opposite elliptic-lanceolate, acute at both ends, entire, minutely pubescent; spike terminal often several together, flower white in dense bracteate axillary and terminal spike; fruits capsule.

**Fls. & Frts.:** December-April

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 17.2.2010. Roma-700.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & flowers

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Drinking of half a glass of decoction of leaf or flower is prescribed twice a day for a week to cure cold, cough, stomach trouble, fever etc.
2. Bathing with the decoction of leaves gets relieve from, measle, muscle pain, sprain etc.

**Food:** Young leaves and flowers are taken as vegetable.

**Established report:** Roots, leaves and flowers are used in bronchitis, asthma and rheumatism. Leaves are insecticidal. Leaf juice is used in diarrhea, dysentery and glandular tumours. Powdered leaves are used to skin infection. It is also used in stopping post paratum haemorrhage (Pal & Jain, 1998).

---


**Vern. Name:** Yaithamna-manbi (K & M)

**Distribution:** Manipur, Himalayan region & Malaysia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild found in foot hills.

Herb; leaves usually 2-opposite, petiole short just above the surface, oblong; flowers light purple in spike, before leaves.

**Fls. & Frts.:** March-April

**Specimen examined:** Kaiphundai. 30.4.2011. Roma-1324. (Plate-17-F).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Tuber
**Medicinal uses:**

Taking of 100 ml of the decoction of tuber, twice a day for 1 month to cure leucorrhoea.

**Established report:** Tubers are used in diarrhea, cough, fever and tonsilitis. Paste of tuber is applied on swelling body parts to reduce inflammation.


**Vern. Name:** Zoureipai (K), Hawai-thangpak (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Europe, Altai & Songaria..

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated

Annual twining; leaves trifoliolate, simple, leaflets 5-15cm long, ovate, acute, base coneate or deltoid, glabrous; racemes; flower purple; fruit pod.

**Fls. & Frts.:** Throughout year

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 24.11.2011. Roma-1404.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Pods

**Food:**

Pods are used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Pods are taken as vegetable.


**Vern. Name:** Khongdrum (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated in jhum fields and home gardens.

Profusely branching climber, softly pubescent; leaves suborbicular, cordate, tendril bifid, petiole erect, bi-glandular at the apex; flowers monoecious, white, solitary; male flowers peduncle as long as the petiole; female flower calyx tube cup shaped, ovary long; fruit bottle shaped, oblong and varies.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June- January

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Changning. 30.11.2011. Roma-1412.
Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Fruits

Food:

Fruits are used as vegetable.

Established report: Fruits are taken as vegetable


Vern. Name: *Tumba* (K), *Tuwng* (M)

Distribution: Throuhgout India, America & Egypt.

Habitat: Terrestrial, rarely cultivated.

A large, pubescent, climber with stout 5-angled and bifid tendrils; leaves ovate or orbicular, cordate base, 5-lobed, petiole long with 2 glands at its apex; flower large, white, solitary, monoecious or dioecious, the male long and female short-peduncled; calyx tube funnel-shaped; fruits of variable size, bottle-shaped with numerous seeds and having bitter test.

Fls. & Frts.: July-December


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves, flowers & fruits

Medicinal uses:

1. 15-20 ml of decoction of fruit is given twice a day for 1-3 months to treat leucorrhoea, jaundice, asthma, bronchitis, ulcers, vaginal and urinal complaints.
2. Paste of flowers is applied for toothache.
3. A glass of decoction of leaves is given once a day for a week with honey in cough.

Household materials:

Pods are made from dried fruits. It is used for drinking water and liquors.

Established report: Fruits are used to treat leucorrhrea, asthma, ulcer and ash of fruits mixed with honey, is applied in eyes to treat night-blindness. Leaves are used in jaundice, earache etc.

**Vern. Name:** *Nongbalei* (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, tropical & Sub-tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in wastelands and domesticated as biofencing.

Straggling shrub, quadrangular recurved panicles, pubescent, canaliculated for young; leaves opposite decussate, ovate to oblong, crenate serrate along margin; flower bracteates, sessile, bract long lanceolate, subacuminate at apex, scabrous green, flower varies in colour; fruit drupe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** Throughout year

**Specimen examined:** Kaiphundai. 30.4.2001. Roma-1325. (Plate-18-A).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plant

**Medicinal uses:**

1. About 5 ml. of leaf juice with 10 drops of honey is given thrice a day for a week to cure diarrhea when the motion is loose.
2. Leaf paste is applied on cuts and wounds to control bleeding.
3. 5 ml. of leaf juice with a little amount of common salt or soda is used once a day for a week in constipation.

**Insecticide:**

Extract of leaves and fruits are used as insecticides in home-garden plants.

**Biofencing:**

It is cultivated to be used as biofencing.

**Established report:** Leaf decoction is used to treat measles and chicken pox and it is given to malarial fever by the Munda tribe. In South Asia, leaf decoction is used as tonic and stimulant (Pal & Jain, 1998).

**Vern. Name:** Chigonglei angouba (K), Chekhongrii-iwar (M)

**Distribution:** Through out India, Mexico & Central America.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and domesticated, common in wastelands and road sides.

Shrub or small tree, branching, unarmed; leaves bipinate, pinate 6-16 pairs, leaflets 20-30 pairs, caduceus, linear, glaucous, membranous, acute, finely downy; flower in dense globose head, white; fruit pod.

**Flowering & Fruiting:** Whole year

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 18.7.2010. Roma-1227.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Young fruits & seeds

**Food:**

Young fruits and seeds are eaten as vegetable.

**Established report:** Bark is consumed to relieve intestinal pain in Assam. Leaves and fruits are used as fodder.


**Vern. Name:** Mayang-lembum (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Assam, Bihar, Tripura, West Bengal, Western India, Myanmar, Philippines & Vietnam.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild common in wasteland, road sides.

Annual, wild herb; leaves sub-sessile or short petiole, linear or narrowly oblong lanceolate, entire or distantly crenate, acute, narrowed at the base; flowers in terminal and axillary dense whorls, bracteates, white; fruits nutles, ellipsoid, black.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-February

**Specimen examined:** Chingmeirong. 6.7.2009. Roma-764.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Shoots
**Medicinal uses:**

1. Juice of leaves and tender shoots is dropped (1 drop) as nasal drop thrice a day for 1 month to cure sinusitis.
2. Shoots are eaten as curry twice in a week as blood purifier.
3. It is used by the new mothers for giving high quantity of milk.

**Food:**

Shoots are used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Leaves are used to treat cold, cough, stomach trouble, headache and alcoholic extract of leaves has antibacterial activity (Khare, 2004).


**Vern. Name:** Ngairong (K), Ttingthaang (M)

**Distribution:** Hill districts of Manipur, Khasi-hill, Nepal & China.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild found in forest.

- Small tree, aromatic, wild, deciduous, branched; leaves in equilateral, ovate, lanceolate, acuminate, glabrous; flowers yellowish white in axillary umbe; fruits small, globose.

**Fls. & Frts.** January-July


**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Flowers & fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

*Flowers and fruits (5 g) are used every day for 10 days in cough.*

**Spices:**

Flowers and fruits are used as indigenous spices.

**Established report:** Flowers and fruits are taken as spices (Singh, 1990).

*New uses in ethnobotany*

**Vern. Name:** Sebot-linmanbi (K), Beror (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Nepal & China.

**Habitat:** Common in jhum fields and homegardens.

Climber with slender, shortly pubescent, 5-angled stems, tendrils 3-branched; leaves alternate, orbicular in outline, 5-7 lobed, scabrid on both sides, base cordate; flowers unisexual, male flowers yellow with 3 stamens, female flowers yellow, solitary in same axis as male; fruits cylindrical or club-shaped, tapering towards the base, smooth, longitudinal white ridge.

**Fls. & Frts.:** May-October

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Sarei. 30.11.2011. Roma-1409.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Leaf juice is applied to treat leprosy.
2. Taking of 100 ml of decoction (luke warm) of leaves is use once a day for 3-5 months to treat bronchitis, asthma.
3. Leaf paste is used to treat snake bite.
4. Fruits (3-5) are taken every day to treat stomach trouble.

**Food:**

Fruits are used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Fruits and leaves are used in bronchitis and asthma. Seed oil is applied to skin infections (Pal & Jain, 1998). Fruits are used as vegetable (Devi *et al*., 2011b).


**Vernacular name:** Sebot (K), Beror (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & Tropical countries.
**Habitat:** Cultivated in jhums and surrounding fencings.

Extensive climber; leaves palmately 5-lobed to various extent, lobes triangular, tendril trifid; flowers monoecious, bright yellow, male and female often in the same axil, male flowers in raceme, female flowers solitary, ovary cylindrical; fruits fusiform cylindrical or clovate.

**Fls. & Frts.:** March-October

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Khullen. 30.3.2009. Roma-715.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Young leaves & fruits

**Food:**

Fruits are used as vegetable.

Young leaves are used in traditional dish called ‘ooti’.

**Household materials:**

Veins of matured fruits are used as sponge for bathing, cleaning of utensils in the kitchen etc.

**Established report:** Young fruits are used to treat leprosy, spleen diseases, piles, fever and bronchitis. Fruits are used as vegetables and veins of ripen fruits are scrubber of utensils.

---


**Vern. Name:** *Panthaukheangmei* (K), *Khajandi* (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Annual pubescent herb, leaves pinnate with small leaflets, leaflets 5-9 pairs, ovate to oblong, toothed or lyrate, acuminate; flowers yellow, many in peduncled cymes; fruits pulpy, berry, red when ripe, flatten at both ends or globose or oblets or furrowed.

**Fls. & Frts.:** January-October

**Specimen examined:** Langthabal Khoupum. 7.5.2009. Roma-739.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits & leaves
Medicinal uses:
1. Fruits are taken as curry twice in a week as blood purifier and in asthma, dysentery, indigestion etc.
2. Pulp of fruits is applied on head to relieve headache.

Food:

Fruits and young leaves are eaten as vegetables.
Leaves are used as vegetable to cook the indigenous dish called ‘ooti’.

Established report: Fruits are taken as blood purifier, apetiser and used in asthma, bronchitis and gastric problem. Paste of fruits is applied on head to relieve headache (Sinha, 1996). Fruits are used as vegetable.


Vern. Name: *Laichangrang* (K & M)

Distribution: All over India, Eastern Asia south to northern Australia, Southern China & Northern Australasia.

Habitat: Creeping to bushy plants.

Creeper, adaxially flattened; fronds tripinnate, glabrous, leaflets tothed and densely or sparsely pubescent all over; veins distinct, 1-3 forked, fertile leaflets narrower than sterile ones; sori on spike, arranged adaxially, producing from the margin; sporangia large dehiscent from the margin, sporangia large dehiscent by verital slite, brown colour when mature.

Fertile period: Whole year


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Whole plant

Medicinal uses:
1. Taking of 100 ml of decoction of plants is prescribed twice a day for a week to treat stomachache, diarrhea
2. Paste of leaves is applied to treat leprosy.

Established report: Fronds chewed with salt to cure stomach trouble (Devi, 2008).

**Vern. Name:** Kengoi (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur.

**Habitat:** Common in swampy areas.

Annual herb, spreading, terete, glabrous, branched; leaves alternate, auricled, ovate, subacute, entire, base tapering into a narrow petiole; flowers white in elongated spike; fruits capsule, oblong.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-December

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Sarei. 15.5.2009. Roma-744. (Plate-18-C).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Above ground parts

**Medicinal uses:**

Whole plant boiled with added ingredients is used as curry to promote appetite, to stimulate digestive processes and also for treatment of diarrhoea and dysentery.

**Food:**

Whole plant is eaten as vegetable.

**Established report:** Whole plants are used in indigestion. It is used as vegetable (Devi et al., 2011a & b).


**Vern. Name:** U-napu (K & M)

**Distribution:** Hills of Manipur, North-Eastern states of India & Himalayan region.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

Shrub; Leaves pinnate, 5-9 pairs, ovate or broadly ovate, coriceous shining above, dull beneath, spinose-dantate along margin; flowers fascicles in dense racemes, yellow; fruits berry, globose.

**Fls. & Frts.:** April-October

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 10.5.2011.
Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Stem

Dye:

*Stem is used for dying of yellow colour.

Established report: Tender shoots sare taken as vegetable by the Tangkhul tribe of Manipur (Sumitra et al., 2012).

*New report in ethnobotany


Vern. Name: *Ureirom laba* (K & M)

Distribution: Throughout Manipur, North-Eastern States, Sri Lanka, Malaysia, Australia & Taiwan.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild in forest and road sides.

Small evergreen tree; leaves alternate, variable, mostly usually ovate-elliptic or ovate-lanceolate, acute to acuminate with numerous red glands beneath, glabrous above; flowers dioecious, male flowers in terminal spikes, females solitary; fruits capsule with densely redish-brown glandular pubescence.

Fls. & Frts.: August-April


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Fruits

Dye:

Fruits are used for dyeing of orange colour.

Established report: Fruits are used as remedy for expelling tapeworms and it is also used as oral contraceptive (John, 2001). Fruits are used for dying.


(Malvaceae)

Vern. Name: *Moroklei* (K & M)

Distribution: All over India, Nepal, Myanmar & China.

Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated.
Cultivated, ornamental, evergreen shrub; leaves ovate, acuminate, serrate, glabrous or with few scattered hairs on the veins beneath; flower axillary, solitary, single or double, red orange, pink, yellow, crimson etc.; epicalyx segmented 5-10, free, shortly connate, in articulate, corolla scarlet, petals erect, not spread; staminal tube longer than petals; stigma 10, connate at the base.

**Fls. & Frts.:** Throughout year

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 1.11.2011. Roma-1387.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plants

**Hair lotion:**

Leaves are used to hair lotion.

**Biofencing:**

Plants are cultivated for use as biofencing.

**Established report:** It is preserved as ornamental and biofencing.

---


**Vern. Name:** Bathai (K), Heno (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Myanmar, Thailand & tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Cultivated, evergreen tree with dense crown and greyish white stem; leaves oblong lanceolate, coriaceous, acuminate, glabrous, pinkish when very young, turning yellow before falling; flower greenish white in terminal panicles, sessile; fruits drup fleshy, oranged yellow when ripe, heart shaped.

**Fls. & Frts.:** January-July

**Specimen examined:** Tamei. 16.3.2010. Roma-1203.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Bark & fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

A glass of bark decoction is given twice a day for five days to treat dysentery and fever.
Food:

Fruit pulp is taken as fruit.

Unripe fruit boiled in water with molasses is served as fruit juice during community feast.

Established report: Powdered seeds are used to treat bleeding piles, seeds are used in diarrhoea and leaves are chewed to give tone to the gums. Fruits are taken as fresh fruit.


Vern. Name: Bathai (K), Heno (M)

Distribution: Nort-East states of India & Nepal.

Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated

Cultivated, evergreen tree with dense, bark brownish grey; leaves oblong lanceolate, large, ascending, glabrous, ramification, pinkish when very young, turning yellow before falling; flower greenish white on longer glabrous pedicles, pentamorous, sessile; fruits drup fleshy, oranged yellow when ripe, heart shaped, small.

Fls. & Frts.: February-July

Specimen examined: Tamenglong. 16.3.2010. Roma-1204.

Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Bark & fruits

Medicinal uses:

A glass of bark decoction is given twice a day for five days to check dysentery and fever.

Food:

Fruit pulp is taken as fruit.

Established report: Powdered seeds are used to treat bleeding piles, seeds are used in diarrhea and leaves are chewed to give tone to the gums. Fruits are taken as fresh fruit.

**Vern. Name:** Thengdru (K), Thing-beroh (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, Jhuming cultivation and fencing.

Shrub with large tubers; leaves palmately 5-7 lobed, lobes oblanceolate, petiole long; flowers large, monoecious in raceme, male above and female below; calyx campanulate, 5-lobed, petals absent; stamens 10 in two whorl; ovary one ovule in each cill.

**Fls. & Frts.:** May-August

**Specimen examined:** Noney. 19.9.2010. Roma-1269.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & tubers

**Food:**

Young leaves are used in singju, ametpa and ironba (indigenous food of Manipuri).

Tubers are taken as additional source of carbohydrates in different forms.

**Established report:** Leaf juice is applied on headache, skin diseases including ringworm. Tubers are used as vegetable (Devi *et al*., 2011b).


**Vern. Name:** Pawangbim (K), Yachubi (M)

**Distribution:** All over India & warmer countries

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild common in wasteland areas and road sides.

Shrub; leaves opposite, elliptic-lanceolate, tomentose; flowers purplish in terminal fascicles; fruits hypanthium, seeds black.

**Fls. & Frts.:** March-December

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Sarei. 16.8.2009. Roma-777. (Plate-18-E).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Root
**Medicinal uses:**

Taking of 100 ml of root decoction is given once a day for 3 months to treat diabetes.

**Dye:**

Seeds are used to dye black colour of teeth.

**Established report:** Root powder is given in children dysentery; leaf decoction is used to treat leucorrhoea, root paste is used for blackening teeth (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** *Nungshit-hidak* (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Western Himalayas, Kashmir, North & Western Asia to China.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated in homegarden.

Cultivated herb branched; leaves simple, opposite, ovate margin toothed flowers small in bunches, borne on axils of leaves.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-January


**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & shoots

**Medicinal uses:**

About 5 ml of leaves juice with a glass of luke warm water and a spoon of hoey is given once a day for a week to cure stomach trouble and it is also used as pain killer.

**Food:**

Leaves are taken as fresh or cooked for indigestion.

**Spices:**

Leaves are used as spices.

**Established Report:** Leaf juice is applied in intestinal worm, irregular menstruation, indigestion, stomach and rheumatism (Khare, 2004 & Devi, 2010).

**Vern. Name:** *Chununsynthai* (K), *Thepi* (M)  
**Distribution:** Throughout India, tropical & sub-tropical countries.  
**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

Wild, deciduous small tree with straight opposite simple or 3-nate spines; leaves simple opposite, ovate-elliptic or oblong, acute or shortly acuminate, glabrous, sometimes sparsely pilose beneath, curving upward near the margin, petiole short, stipule connate, cuspidate; flowers greenish white in short peduncled cymes, aillary or supra axillary; fruit fleshy drup with 5-pyrenes.

**Fls. & Frts.:** April-December

**Specimen examined:** Japhou. 24.9.2009. Roma-783.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Leaves (5-10) are taken as fresh or cooked as curry for ten days to treat blood circulation in women.
2. Warm leaves are applied on boil and burn case to relieve pain and infection.

**Hair lotion:**
Leaves are used as hair lotion.

**Food:**
Leaves are used as vegetable in singju.
Fruits are eaten as fresh fruit.

**Established report:** Leaf decoction is prescribed in dysentery, leaf juice with common salt is given for indigestion and paste of bark is applied on boils (Devi *et al.*, 2011a). Green fruits are pounded and used as fish-poison. Ripen fruits are taken as fresh fruit.

**Vern. Name:** *Leihao* (K), *Lehu* (M)

**Distribution:** All over India & countries of tropical Asia

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and cultivated.

Evergreen tree; leaves ovate lanceolate, entire and wavy shining above, pale and glabrous below; flowers axillary, light yellow to orange in colour, fragrant, perianth; fruits in spike, droop.

**Fls. & Frts.:** March-August

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Sarei. 3.6.2009. Roma-750.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plant

**Medicinal uses:**

1. 10-15 ml of decoction of leaves and bark is given once a day for 5 days to treat measles, and other skin diseases.

2. Flowers are used as insect repellent.

**Timber:**

Stem is good for furnitures.

**Ornamental:**

Planted as an ornamental plant.

**Established report:** It is used as ornamental plant and stems are used in furniture. Decoction of bark and leaves is used in skin diseases (Devi et al., 2011a).


**Vern. Name:** *Sangbrei* (K & M)

**Distribution:** India, China & Myanmar.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.
Aromatic herb leaves broadly ovate, irregularly dentate, broadly cuneate to subcordate, tomentose on both sides; flowers in axillary and terminal cymes, bright yellow in colour; fruits nutlets.

**Fls. & Frts.**: October-February

**Specimen examined**: Heibunglok. 2.10.2009. Roma-785. (Plate-19-A).

**Ethnobotanical uses**:

**Parts used**: Whole plant

**Hair lotion**:

Whole plant is used as hair lotion.

**Established report**: Leaves are used in hair lotion (Devi, 2010).

---


**Vern. Name**: Inriangriumlui (K), Naga-mana (M)

**Distribution**: Throughout India, Africa, America & Asian countries.

**Habitat**: Terrestrial, wild.

Climber; leaves, opposite, triangular ovate, cordate, acute; flowers in small heads in terminal and upper axillary corymbose, greenish white; fruits pappus.

**Fls. and Frts.**: August-February

**Specimen examined**: Kaiphundai. 26.7.2011. Roma-1354

**Ethnobotanical uses**:

**Parts used**: Leaves

**Medicinal uses**:

1. Boiled leaves are applied externally in muscle pain and sprain.
2. Paste of leaves is used in cuts and wounds.

**Fish poison**:

Paste of leaves is applied for fish poisoning.

**Established report**: Leaves are used in skin diseases, snake-bite and scorpion-sting (Pal & Jain, 1998).

**Vern. Name:** Ngamuyai (K), Jehlii (M)

**Distribution:** Forest of North-Eastern states of India, China & Myanmar.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild commonly found in forest and road sides.

Large climber; Leaflets 6-20, oblong-lanceolate to oblanceolate, cuneate, glabrous above, glaucous beneath; flowers light purple in axillary racemes; fruits pod.

**Fls. & Frts.:** February-July

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Changning. 18.7.2010. Roma-1227. (Plate-19-B).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Root

**Fish poison:**

Roots are crushed and poured into water bodies as fish poison for catching fishes.

**Established report:** It is used as fish poison. Seeds are used as ovicidal (Das et al., 2010).


**Vern. Name:** Jathaina (K), Kangphal ekaithabi (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Tropical & Sub-tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild common in wastelands.

Straggling prickly herb; leaves sensitive pinnae 4, digitate, petiole bristly, leaflets 12-20 pairs, obliquely narrow oblong, acute; flower in head, purple, axillary, peduncle covered with spreading bristle; fruit pod lointed, prickly.

**Fls. & Frts.:** February-July

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 20.8.2010. Roma-1253.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plant
Medicinal uses:

1. Bathing with the decoction of whole plant is performed to cure measles and muscle pain.
2. A glass of decoction is given twice a day for one month to relieve urinary problem and gall stone case.
3. During child birth, mothers use the decoction of the whole plant to foment sexual part to prevent infection.

Established report: Root and whole plant is useful for treating leprosy, skin diseases, wounds, diarrhoea, dysentery, vaginal and uterine ailments, leacorrhoea, inflammations, asthma, leucoderma and blood diseases (Khare, 2004, Devi et al., 2011a).


Vern. Name: *Khanathai* (K), *Karot-ekha* (M)

Distribution: Throughout India, China, Malaysia, Sri-Lanka, Tropical Africa & America.

Habitat: Cultivated in the fencings of jhums and houses.

Cultivated, monoecious, tendril climber, 4-5 angled stem; leaves alternate, orbicular, 5-7 lobed; flowers pale yellow, solitary in leaf axils; fruits fusiform, 8-10 ribbed, tubes culate, seed brownish, compressed pulp red when ripe.

Fls. & Frts.: March-October


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves & fruits

Medicinal uses:

1. Paste of leaves is applied to cure ringworm.
2. Fruits are eaten as vegetable twice in a week to relieve stomach trouble, cough, fever and as wormicide. It is also taken twice weekly for 3-5 months as an essential diet to control jaundice, diabetes and hypertension.
Food:
Fruit is used as vegetable in kanghou, ironba and ametpa (indigenous food).

Established report: Fruits are used as remedy for diabetes, digestive stimulant, cough, respiratory diseases including asthma and bronchitis, fever, intestinal worm, ulcer, anaemia, urinary trouble (Devi et al., 2011a).


Vern. Name: *Hau* (K), *Mee* (M)

Distribution: Whole India & tropical regions of the world

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild and cultivated.

Cultivated, perennial herb with rhizomentous underground stem, the aerial stem is tall are supported by the closely packed leaf sheaths which form pseudo stem; leaves developed from the hear of the pseudo-stem, glabrous, simple, lanceolate or oblong, entire with promonent midrib and sheathing leaf-base; inflorescence spadix enclosed by fleshy spathaceous bracts; fruits berry or capsule; seeds often arillate with rarely endosperm and with straight embryo.

Fls. & Frts.: Whole year


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Root, leaves, stem, inflorescence & fruits

Medicinal uses:

1. Paste of root is applied over forehead to relieve headache.
2. Paste of ripen fruits with molasses and *Tamarindus indica* is given to cure dysentery once a day for five days.

Socio-religious:

Leaves are used in ritual ceremonies of the Kabuis.

The leaves are also used as wrapper for edible items in the functions and ceremonies of both the tribes.

Food:

Stem and inflorescence are used as vegetable in several items of delicacies in both the tribes.

Fruit is taken as favourite fruit.
Dye:

Pseudostem juice of the plant is used to dye, black colour.

**Established report:** Unripe fruits are used in diabetes, ripe fruits are used as a mild demulcent, astringent in dysentery. Root and stem are useful in venereal diseases (Khare, 2004).


**Vern. Name:** *Hanu-lei* (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild found in bushy areas.

Wild, shrub, branched; leaves simple, elliptic-ovate, apex acuminate, more or less pubescent beneath, base rounded or tapering into the petiole; flowers tubular-funnel-shaped, yellow interterminal cymes, one calyx lobe occasionally modified into foliage white leaf; fruits berry, rounded or ovoid, glabrous.

**Fls. & Frts.:** Whole year


**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Roots, leaves & flowers

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Paste of root or leaves is applied for snake bite thrice daily for a week.
2. 100 ml of leaves decoction is given twice daily for a week against children intestinal worms and cough.

**Hair lotion:**

Leaves and flowers are used in hair lotion as hair care.

**Established report:** Decoction of leaves or roots is given for cough. Flowers are diuretic, used in dropsy, asthma and recurrent fever. Roots and barks are used in mouth ulcer (Das et al., 2010).

**Vern. Name:** Luikhumthai (K), Nonganghei (M)

**Distribution:** North-east states of India, Khasi-hills & Bangladesh.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

Wild aromatic, small evergreen, tree; leaves oblong-lanceolate, oblanceolate-elliptic or obovate, glabrous above with resinous dots beneath, acute; flowers unisexual in bracteates spikes; fruits ovoid-oblong, green, red when ripe, soury.

**Fls. & Frts.**: August-February

**Specimen examined:** Tousem. 8.10.2011. Roma-1340. (Plate-19-D).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits

**Food:**

Fruits are used to make local wine.

Fruits are taken as sour fruit.

**Established report:** Juice of bark is used to treat ringworm, asthma, diarrhoea, dysentery. Bark is chewed to relieve toothache and it is also used as fish-poison. Decoction of bark is used in asthma, bronchitis, diarrhea and dysentery (Das et al., 2010).


**Vern. Name:** Thambal (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & tropical Asia.

**Habitat:** Aquatic, wild and cultivated in ponds and lakes.

Aquatic herb having stout creeping rhizome; leaves large, pellate, raised above water, petiole length is proportionate with depth of water; flowers terminal on the scape, red or white, large, sepals 4-5, connuous, petals many gradually changing to stamens, stamens many, carpels many free, sunk in pits of turbinate, spongy torus.

**Fls. & Frts.**: June-September

Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Young leaves, flowers, fruits & tuber

Medicinal uses:

1. Half a glass of decoction of flowers with honey, twice a day for a week is prescribed for cholera, cough, dysentery and fever.
2. Paste of tuber is applied twice a day till recovered for scabies and ringworm.
3. Fresh seeds are given to children to increase eye power.
4. Rhizomes are given to control diabetes.

Food:

Young leaves, flowers and rhizome are eaten as vegetables.
Seeds are edible.

Established report: Flowers are very important, it is offered to Gods and Goddess by the Meitei community. Decoction of rhizome is prescribed to treat blood dysentery, juice of flower stalk is applied on scabies. Mundas applied the paste of flowers on bone fracture and Santals applied it on forehead to relieve headache (Sinha, 1996).


Vern. Name: Ekaithabi (K & M)

Distribution: Ponds and lakes of Manipur, Australia & USA.

Habitat: Aquatic, cultivated in ponds.

Annual aquatic plant, branches zig-zag, bearing radial fibres at the nodes and spongy floats on the internodes; leaves bipinate with persistent stipules, pinnae 4-6, leaflets glabrous, obtuse; flowers small in dense head on axillary peduncle and yellow; fruits pod.

Fls & Frts.: August –October


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Young shoot
Food:

Young shoots are used as green vegetable.

Established report: Tenders are taken as vegetable (Devi et al., 2011b).


Vern. Name: *Kabi-rei* (K & M)

Distribution: All over India, Afganistan & Japan.

Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated.

Cultivated, evergreen, branching, shrub; leaves linear lanceolate, tapering at the both ends; coriaceous; flowers in terminal cyme, pink.

Fls. & Frts.: Whole year


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Whole plant

Medicinal uses:

1. Paste of roots or leaves are used for skin diseases eg. Scabies, leprosy etc.
2. Powder of dried leaves is used as stuff for treating epilepsy.
3. Decoction of roots is used for abortion.

Ornamental:

Plants are cultivated as ornamental.

Food:

Tender leaves are taken as vegetable.

Established report: Root and bark is used to treat skin diseases; decoction of leaves is used in eczema (Khare, 2004).


Vern. Name: *Hidakmana* (K), Janha (M)

Distribution: Throughout India, Central & South America, Argentina, Columbia & West Indies.

Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated.
Cultivated herb; leaves large, oblong or elliptic, base cuneate, corymb compound, ultimate branches short; flowers greenish white in raceme.

**Fls. & Frts.:** April-September

**Specimen examined:** Heibunglok. 10.6.2010. Roma-1218. (Plate-19-E).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves

**Veterinary:**

Handful of leaves is pounded with a little water and is poured into the nostrils of cattle to expel the leeches.

**Insecticide:**

Paste of leaves is used as insecticidal.

**Nacrotic**

Dried leaves are used orally as nacortic.

**Established report:** Plants are used as antiseptic, emetic, vermifuge and antioxidant. Decoction of leaves is used in joint pain, muscle pain, irritation of rheumatic swelling and to treat strangulated hernia and skin diseases. Oil extracted from leaves is useful to treat arthralgia, gout, lumbago and rheumatism (Pal & Jain, 1998).

---


**Vern. Name:** Singarei (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Myanmar, Thailand, Malaysia, China, Nepal, Bangladesh and tropical & Sub-tropical countries.

**Habited:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Small tree or shrub, bark rough greenish; leaves opposite, ovate, acuminate, base rounded or cuneate, entire, rough and scabrous above, densely pubescent beneath; flowers aromatic, white with orange petiole, axillary or solitary in terminal cymes; fruits capsule, sub-orbicular or compressed.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-February

**Specimen examined:** Langthabal Khoupum. 220.10.2010. Roma-1283. (Plate-19-F).
Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves

Medicinal uses:

1. 5-10 ml of leaves decoction is given to fever, stomach troubles and intestinal infection once a day for a week.
2. Bathing with leaf decoction is prescribed to prevent skin diseases like scabies, ring-worm etc.
3. Paste of leaves is applied on forehead to relieve headache.

Ornamental:

It is planted as ornamental.

Established report: Decoction of bark with common salt is given to dysentery. Leaf decoction is used to treat fever, malaria, ringworm, intestinal worms etc. Decoction of leaf, bark and roots is applied on spleen and powder of seeds is used against dandruff (Pal & Jain, 1998).


Vern. Name: *Tharo angouba* (K & M)

Distribution: Throughout the warmer parts of India, Asia & Europe.

Habitat: Aquatic, wild or cultivated commonly found in lakes and ponds.

Aquatic herb with nodulous corms; leaves orbicular or elliptic, usually blotched with purple beneath, entire or slightly sinuate glabrous, stalk as long water deep, white.

Fls. & Frts.: June-October


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Flowers & corm

Ornamental:

Flowers are used for decoration.

Food:

Flowers and petioles are eaten as vegetable either raw or cooked.

Corms are also edible.
Established report: Young leaf paste is applied on scabies and dried corm powder is given to stop dysentery (Pal & Jain, 1998).


**Vern. Name:** *Thariktha* (K & M)

**Distribution:** Manipur, Assam, Asia & Europe.

**Habitat:** Aquatic, wild found in lakes.

Aquatic, corm ovoid, not nodular herb; leaves orbicular or elliptic, usually glabrous; flowers usually light blue sometimes white or pink; fruit 13-30 celled, seeds straite.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-September

**Specimen examined:** Langthabal Khoupum. 20.10.2010. Roma-1283.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Petioles & corms

**Food:**

Petioles are used as vegetable and corms are edible.

Established report: Warm corm paste is applied on piles and is used to treat goiter by Santal tribes. Dried corm powder with lime water is given to cattle against stopping of mastications.

216. *Ocimum americanum* L., Cent. Pl. 1:15.1755. (Lamiaceae)

**Vern. Name:** *Majarong* (K), *Nasing-jeerhiing* (M)

**Distribution:** All over India, Tropical & temperate regions of the world.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Annual small herb with branches; leaves opposite, ovate, acute, entire, or finely toothed; flowers greenish white in spikate raceme; fruits nutlets, ellipsoid, black, pitted, mucilagenous when wet.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-December

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Sarei. 16.8.2009. Roma-776. (Plate-20-C).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves, shoots & seeds
Medicinal uses:
1. Paste of leaves and shoots are applied with kerosene to relieve muscular pain, sprains and bone fracture.
2. Paste of seeds is applied on the boils.

Spices:
Leaves and shoots are used as spices and condiments.

Established report: Leaves are used to treat earache, fever, toothache and dried plants are burnt as mosquito repellent (Devi, 2010).

Vern. Name: Macheang (K), Ngovorii (M)
Distribution: Manipur, Northeastern states of India & tropical countries.
Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated

Annual small herb with branches; leaves opposite, ovate lanceolate, acute, entire, or finely toothed, purplish; flowers purple in spikate raceme; fruits nutlets.

Fls. & Frts.: Throughout the Year

Ethnobotanical Uses:
Parts used: Whole plants

Medicinal uses:
Whole plant boiled in water is taken for bath for the treatment of diarrhoea, skin diseases like measles, scabies etc in children.

Established report: Leaves and flowers are used in stomach trouble, gonorrhoea, dysentery, diarrhoea, ringworms, earache etc. (Devi, 2010).

Vern. Name: Tulshi (K & M)
Distribution: All over India & Tropical region of the world.
Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated.
Cultivated, herb with woody stem; leaves oblong, obtuse or acute, entire or sub serrate; flowers leaves sessile, ovate, lanceolate or cordate in raceme slender, pedicels long.

Fls. & Frts.: Throughout Year


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves & shoots

Medicinal uses:

1. One spoon of leaves or shoot extract is added to one glass of lukewarm water and a spoonful of honey mixture is given twice a day for one week for treatment of cough and cold.

2. Leaves juice is applied to cuts and wounds as antiseptic.

Socioreligious:

Leaves are used in the ritual ceremonies of Kabui tribe.

Established report: Leaves are used in leucoderma, fever, cough, earache and dried leaf powder is applied on head as lice repellent. Leaves and inflorescences are used in magico-religious belief (Devi, 2010).


Vern. Name: *Komprek* (K & M)

Distribution: Manipur, marshy areas of the country & China.

Habitat: Common in swampy areas.

Perennial herb; leaves unipinnate or bipinnate, leaflets ovate-lanceolate or lanceolate-rhomboid; flowers white in axillary and terminal umbels.

Fls. & Frts.: March-October

Specimen examined: Keikhu. 4.7.2009. Roma-762. (Plate-20-A).

Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Above ground parts

Food:

Above ground parts are taken as vegetable.

Established report: It is used as vegetable (Devi *et al.*, 2011b).

**Vern. Name:** *U-khajing* (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Western Ghat, Myanmar & Sri Lanka.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Evergreen tree; leaves alternate, narrow-elliptic or oblanceolate, apex caudate, acuminate, entire or crenulate towards apex; flowers in axillary cymose head, greenish white; fruits achene.

**Fls. & Frts.:** August- March

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Sarei. 26.9.2010. Roma-1273.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

A glass of leaf decoction is taken daily continuously to control diabetes.

**Food:**

Flowers are taken as vegetable.

**Established report:** Leaves are used in diabetes and it is very rich in flavanoid. Leaves are used as antioxidant.


**Vern. Name:** *Jeitambianbang* (K), *Wachamber* (M)

**Distribution:** India & tropical Asia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

Wild, middle sized, deciduous tree with numerous corky lenticels; leaves opposite, very large, ternately bipinnate with opposite pinnae, leaflets 2-4 pairs, ovate or elliptic, entire, acuminate, petiolate; flowers purple in recemes, terminal, large, corolla large campanulate, fleshy; fruit large pod, flat, straight or curved, tapering at both ends.
**Fls. & Frts.:** March-December

**Specimen examined:** Japhou. 2.7.2009. Roma-758. (Plate-20-B).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Roots, leaves, bark & fruits.

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Root and leaves are boiled in water and bath is taken to get relieve from muscular pain.
2. Fomentation with the decoction of bark, leaves or roots is applied to relieve piles.
3. The fresh fruit or cooked along with meals is taken orally to control hypertension, diabetes, and for curing piles, cough, fever and stomach trouble by both the tribes.
4. A glass of bark decoction is given twice a day for ten days to cure jaundice.
5. One nasal drop of bark juice is given twice a day for a month to cure sinusitis.

**Food:**

Fruits are used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Juice of bark are useful for stimulating digestion, fever, cough, respiratory disorders, diarrhoea, dysentery, abdominal pain, rheumatism, vomiting, intestinal worm, skin diseases etc. Leaf paste is used in joint pain & stomachache (Pal & Jain, 1998). Fruits are taken as vegetable (Devi et al., 2011b).


**Vern. Name:** Nap (K), Shaang (M)

**Distribution:** All over India, Tropical & sub-tropical regions.

**Habitat:** Both aquatic and terrestrial are cultivated in wet fields and Jhum fields.

Annual herb; leaves opposite, flat, linear, acuminate, scabrid on the margin, sheath smooth with ciliate auricle, legule long, scarious, lanceolate with spiny hairs; flowers in terminal panicles, spikelets single.

**Fls. & Frts.:** August-December

Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Above ground parts

Medicinal uses:

Grains chewed in mouth and applied as antidote for snake bite.

Food:

Rice is the main staple food and it is used for making varieties of food items.

Detergent:

The ashes of straw are soaked in water overnight and the decant is used as detergent. Decant is also used to make a special kind of curry called ‘ooti’.

Hair-lotion:

Rice water is used as hair lotion.

Established report: Root paste is used to treat measles. Ash of straw with curd is given in the morning to cure gastric trouble (Pal & Jain, 1998).


Vern. Name: *Tupit* (K), *Titra* (M)

Distribution: Throughout India, Tropical & Sub-tropical countries.

Habitat: Commonly found in marshy areas and wastelands.

Wild diffused herb with procumbent herb, rooting at the nodes; leaves alternate, stipule adnate to the petiole; peduncles two or more flowered; buds modified to bulbils, flowers yellow; fruits pod.

Fls. & Frts.: June-December


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Whole plants

Medicinal uses:

A glass of boiled extract of whole plant is mixed with little salt and given for indigestion, once in a day.
Hair lotion:
It is used as hair lotion.

Food:
Leaves and shoots are eaten as vegetable.

Established report: Leaf juice is used for cooling, antiscorbutic, stomachic and diuretic. It is given in the treatment of indigestion and diarrhoea, dysentery and piles. Fresh juice is used to cure dyspepsia, piles and anaemia (Khare, 2004).


Vern. Name: Oinumloi (K), Fithoupuw (M)

Distribution: Throughout India, China, Malaya, Philipines & Japan.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild.

Climber; leaves opposite, elliptic-ovate, acuminate, entire, dark-green when mature, sub-cordate at the base; flowers greyish purple in axillary and terminal ends; fruits ellipsoid, redish in colour compressed.

Fls. & Frts.: May-October


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves & stem

Medicinal uses:

1. Fresh or steamed (3-5) leaves are orally taken to cure piles and dysentery.

2. Paste of leaves or stem is used externally in fracture and sprain.

Established report: Fruit decoction is used for asthma. Root decoction is used in hysteria and leaves are used in stomach pain, intestinal trouble and against intestinal worm (Sinha, 1996).

**Vern. Name:** Kampai (K), Yongcha (M)

**Distribution:** All over India, Myanmar & tropical Asia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild, domesticated

Tree with spreading branches and pubescent shoots; leaves bipinate main rachis pinnae and several between the pinnae, pinnae 8-30 pairs, opposite, leaflets 40-80 pairs; flowers in turbinate or clavate, long peduncled head with sterile flowers, bracts spathulate, silky pubescent outside; fruit pod.

**Fls. & Frts.:** September- April

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Sarei. 6.9.2009. Roma-778. (Plate-20-F).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Young leaves, flowers, bark & fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

Fresh or boiled seeds are taken orally to cure piles.

**Dye:**

Bark and fruits are used in black dye.

**Food:**

Fruits are favourite vegetable of all Manipuri in all items, especially in traditional dish ‘Ironba’. Flowers and young leaves are also used as vegetable (Devi *et al.*, 2011b).

**Established report:** Fruits are taken as vegetable. Pods and seeds are used for treating stomach disorder (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** Kuhi (K), Ehrie (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Northeastern states of India, Himalayan ranges, Myanmar, Nepal & Bangladesh.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in forest.
Small tree; leaves coriaceous, elliptic or elliptic-lanceolate, caudate base acute, shining above, pale beneath; flowers in spike, calyx form a large and thick, woody, hard cup cuneate half as long as the hemispheric glabrous nut.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-February

**Specimen examined:** Irang. 20.11.2011. Roma-1349.

**Ethnobotanical report:**

**Parts used:** Whole plant

**Dye:**

Bark is used in black dye.

**Firewood:**

Plant is good source of firewood.

**Established report:** Plants are used as firewood.


**Vern. Name:** Sahi (K), Aecha (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Northeastern states of India, Himalayan ranges, Myanmar, Nepal & Bangladesh.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Small tree, all parts except male spike glabrous; leaves elliptic-oblong or obovate-oblong; flowers monoecious flowers in spike, calyx form hard woody cup is formed covering the fruits; fruits nut.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-February

**Specimen examined:** Irang. 20.11.2011. Roma-1398.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plant

**Dye:**

Bark is used for dyeing of black colour.

**Firewood:**

Plants are used as firewood.

**Established report:** It is used as firewood.

**Vern. Name:** *Sitaphal* (K), *Mejang-anriechii* (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Tropical & Sub-tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated at the fencings.

Climber with woody stem; leaves deeply 3-lobed, suborbicular to broadly ovate, 3 veined from the base, lobes elliptic or oblong, apex acute; flowers fragrant, solitary white but with often purple tinged; fruits globose or ovoid, yellow when ripe with a hard rind enclosing edible pulp and numerous small seeds.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-February

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Changning. 18.7.2010. Roma-1228.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Pulp is used for treatment of intestinal diseases and indigestion.
2. Young leaves are eaten as fresh or cooked to control hypertension, diabetes and peptic ulcer.

**Food:**

Leaves are eaten as vegetable.

Fruits are taken as sweet fruit.

**Established report:** Fruits are considered diuretic and used as a stimulant and tonic (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** *Nongmangkha-ashinba* (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Khashi Hills, Western Ghat, Australia Tropical & Sub-tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in bushy areas.
Shrub; leaves opposite, variable in shape, elliptic-lanceolate, ovate or oblanceolate, acuminate, pubescent beneath; flowers small, white in terminal and lateral corymbose panicle; fruits drue, globose.

**Fls. & Frts.**: June-December

**Specimen examined**: Tamenglong, 23.7.2009. Roma-767. (Plate-21-A).

**Ethnobotanical uses**:

**Parts used**: Leaves

**Medicinal uses**:

Leaf decoction is taken several times in a day to cure jaundice till the symptom disappear and the leaves are also given as curry to the patients.

**Established report**: Roots are tonic, purgative and diuretic, used in urinary diseases and jaundice. Leaves and roots are used as poultice on boils (Pal & Jain, 1998).

---


**Vern. Name**: Thoiding-angouba (K), Lhiimphuw (M)

**Distribution**: All over India, China, Bhutan, Cambodia, Indonesia, Japan, Korea, Laos & Vietnam.

**Habitat**: Terrestrial, cultivated in jhum fields.

Herb with grey hairs; leaves opposite, broadly ovate, coarsely serrate; flowers white in condensed whorl in the terminal and leaf axils, densely villous; fruits nutlet, subglobose, dark-brown when mature.

**Fls. & Frts.**: August-January


**Ethnobotanical uses**:

**Parts used**: Leaves & seeds

**Hair lotion**:

Leaves are also used as hair-lotion.
Food:

Roasted and crushed seeds are used as supplement especially in 'Singju' and 'Ironba'. It is crushed with Zinger, chilly, onion with common salt and taken as appetizer.

Established report: Leaves are used to treat many diseases like depression, anxiety, tumors, cough, allergy, bacterial and fungal infection, etc. Young shoots are used as vegetable and as flavouring agent in many varieties of curries (Devi, 2010).


Vern. Name: *Chakwai* (K), *Beetting* (M)

Distribution: Throughout India & Tropical countries.

Habitat: Cultivated in jhum fields and fencing.

Cultivated, suberect or twining herb, hairy; leaves trifoliate, leaflets ovate-lanceolate, oblong, acute or acuminate, cuneate at the base, thinly hairy; flowers yellow in dense racemes; fruits pod.

Fls. & Frts.: July-March

Specimen examined: Rangpang. 7.8.2011. 1370.

Ethnobotanical uses:

Part used: Seeds

Food:

Fresh seeds are used as vegetable and dried seeds are taken as pulses.

Established report: Dried seeds are used as pulses.


Vern. Name: *Koli-hawai* (K), *Kolibee* (M)

Distribution: Throughout India and tropical & subtropical countries.

Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated in jhums.

Cultivated climber; leaves trifoliate, leaflets ovate or rounded; flowers yellow in racemes; fruits pod, seeds rostrate, turgid and glabrous.

Fls. & Frts.: Whole year

Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Pods

Food:

Young pods and fresh seeds are taken as vegetable and dried seeds are used as pulses.

Established report: Young pods are used as vegetable.


Vern. Name: Khimpui khiangmei (K), Chiipar (M)

Distribution: India, Bangladesh & tropical countrues of Asia.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild.

Shrub; leaves large, opposite, elliptic, slightly dentate, acuminate at both ends; flowers red in terminal dense cymes, bracts linear.

Fls. and Frts.: January-April


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves & flower

Medicinal uses:

1. Boiled extract of leaves and flowers is used in cough and fever.
2. Flowers are taken as fresh or cooked in the treatment of watering nose.
3. Fomentation with decoction of leaves and flowers is applied to relieve sprain and muscular pain.

Food: Flowers are use as vegetable.

Established report: Leaves and flowers are used in fever, cough, hypertension, sprain (Devi et al., 2011a).

**Vern. Name:** Khimpui khangmei (K), Chiipar (M)

**Distribution:** North-East states of India, Myanmar & Bangladesh.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

Shrub, bushy; leaves oblanceolate or elliptic-oblong, acuminate, entire, chartaceous, cuneate at the base; flowers yellow in terminal spikes, bracteate, bracts linear, pubescent; fruits capsule.

**Fls. & Frts.:** February-May

**Specimen examined:** Noney. 1.4.2009. Roma-717. (Plate-21-C).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Young leaves & flowers

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Young leaves boiled or cooked as curry is taken for one month to cure jaundice.

2. Leaves along with flowers are also given to cure fever, to control hypertension and sometimes used as antibiotic.

3. Boiled water is used to relieve muscular pain.

**Food:**

Leaves and flowers are used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Leaves are used in cough, fever and piles. Tender leaves and flowers are taken as vegetable (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** Thangtup (K), Ehnuh (M)

**Distribution:** throughout India, tropical and sub-tropical Asia & Africa.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild found in forest.

Tree with a large crown and rough trunk covered with persistent leaf bases; leaves long with a few short spines at the base, pinnules numerous, linear
ending with short points; flowers small, fragrant in spadices, male flowers white, female greenish; fruits spadix, oblong-ellipsoid berries, oranged yellow when ripe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-April


**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

Fruits are given to cure dysentery and diabetes.

**Food:**

Fruits are edible.

**Established report:** Fruits are used in diarrhoea, dysentery and other stomach troubles. Roots are used to make liquor. Juice of root is given with lime water against indigestion (Khare, 2004).

---

236. **Phyla nodiflora** (L.) Greene, Pittonia 4:46. 1899. (Verbenaceae)

**Vern. Name:** Chinglembi (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Khashi Hills, North America, Italy & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in wastelands.

Herb, creeping, stem prostrate; leaves subsessile, opposite, decussate, oblanceolate to ovate, spathulate, entire; flowers many sessile, white with purple centre, bracts broadly ovate or obovate; fruits drupe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-March

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 1.11.2011. Roma-1384.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

1. It is used to treat heart and blood diseases, eye infection, asthma, bronchitis, ulcers and wounds.
2. Leaves and tenders shoot are given to children to check indigestion.
3. Paste of leaves is applied on forehead to relieve headache.
Food:

Young leaves and inflorescence are eaten as vegetable in singju.

Established report: The plant is antibacterial, diuretic, parasitic and refrigerant. It is used in the treatment of hookworm. The juice of the plant has cooling effect and is used to relieve fever, cough and cold (Pal & Jain, 1998).


Vern. Name: *Gihori* (K & M)

Distribution: Northeastern states of India, Southeast Asia. Philippines & Colombia.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

Wild, deciduous tree, profusely branching, brachlets slender near terminal end, bark grey; leaves distichus obliquely ovate, acute or acuminate, membranous, petiole short; flower minute, slender; male, female and sometimes bisexual flowers crowded together, male pink or red, female green and large, sepals 4, orbicular crenate in female, fruits drupe, globose.

Fls. & Frts.: February-December


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Fruits

Food:

Fruits are edible.

Established report: Raw fruits are eaten. Roots are used in the treatment of psoriasis of the feet. Decoction of the bark is used to treat bronchial catarrh. The fruit is used as a laxative. Fruits are taken as a liver tonic to enrich the blood. The root bark contains saponins, gallic acid and tannins (Deorani & Sharma, 2007).


Vern. Name: *Talaothai* (K), *Sheluw* (M)

Distribution: All over India, Sri Lanka, China, Malaysia & Nepal.
**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild common in forest and domesticated.

Wild, deciduous tree, branched with feathery deciduous leaves, resembling a pinnate leaf, bark greenish or light brown; leaves linear, close set, glabrous, subsessile, paler beneath; stipule minute, fimbricate; flower yellowish, monoecious in axillary cluster, usually crowded towards the lower portion of branchlets, male flowers slender, pedicelled, perianth, female flowers subsessile, perianth; fruits drupe, globose, obscurely 6 lobed, yellowish when ripe, stone split into 2 seeded bony cocci when dry.

**Fls. & Frts.:** July-March.

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 9.8.2010. Roma-1241.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Bark, root, leaves & fruits.

**Medicinal uses:**

1. About 10 g of fruit paste mixed with honey is given orally twice a day for one month to cure jaundice.
2. A glass of root or leaves or bark decoction is given orally twice a day for a week to treat diarrhoea.
3. Fresh or cooked fruits are given to cure cough.

**Hair lotion:**

Fruits are used in hair lotion.

**Food:**

Fruit are taken as sour fruit.

**Established report:** Fruit is source of ‘vitamin C’ and has astringent, diuretic, laxative effects etc. It is also used in indigestion; flowers are refrigerant; seeds are used in asthma (John, 2001).

---

**239. Pimpinella sp.** (Apiaceae)

**Vern. Name:** Chingjangkhomon (K), Shamsang (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Nepal & China.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Perennial herb; lower leaves entire-trifid, round-ovate, upper leaves cauline with 3-5 leaflets subpinnate; flowers greenish white in compound umbel, bracts linear.
Fls. & Frts.: March-August
Specimen examined: Japhou. 8.3.2009. Roma-713.

Ethnobotanical uses:
Parts used: Leaves & flowers

Food:

*Leaves and flowers are used as vegetable.

*New uses in ethnobotany


Vern. Name: Mansang (K & M)

Distribution: All over Manipur, East Bengal & Bangladesh.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild.

Perennial herb; leaves glabrous, lower leaves cordate or trigulate-lanceolate, serrate, upper leaves tripartite, leaflets ovate; flowers white in compound umbels.

Fls. & Frts.: May-October


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Above ground parts

Medicinal uses:

*Steamed whole plant is taken as food for treatment of asthma.

Food:

Plants are taken as vegetable.

Established report: It is used as vegetable.

*New uses in ethnobotany


Vern. Name: *U-chan* (K), *Mhelah & M*

Distribution: Throughout India, Myanmar, Cittagong & Phillipine.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild and cultivated in forest.
Tree, evergreen, branched in whorl; leaves linear, triquetrous, long, sheaths persistent and scales lanceolate, entire transversely, keeled at the apex; staminate cylindrical, whorled on the new shoots, cones 1-3 together, female cones ovoid, 1-3, symmetrical, stalks stout and stiff, scales depressed.

**Fls. & Frts.:** February-October

**Specimen examined:** Japhou. 30.7.2010. Roma-1234.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plant

**Hair lotion:**

*Intercallary meristem of wood is used in hair lotion.

**Timber:**

Trunk is used as timber in making furnitures and household materials.

**Firewood:**

Leaves and other parts are used as firewood and starter of firing.

**Established report:** Stem is used as timber and firewood. Oil extract from pinus resin is used in earache and to expel intestinal worm. Decoction of leaves and bark is given to treat fever and as appetizer (Khare, 2004).

*New uses in ethnobotany*


**Vern. Name:** Panamana (K & M)

**Distribution:** Tamenglong District of Manipur, warm areas of India, Malaysia & Sri Lanka.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild commonly found in forest.

Wild, climber, rooting at the nodes; leaves cordate, acuminate, broadly ovate; flowers dioecious, small male flowers with few stamens, female flowers spike pendulous; fruits globose.

**Fls. & Frts.:** November-May

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 3.8.2009. Roma-761.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves
Medicinal uses:

1. Petiole mixed with lime is applied to treat superficial outgrowths called ‘sagik’ on the soft body parts like face.
2. Leaves are chewed against cough and mouth ulcer.

Food:

Leaves are taken with betel nut after lunch and dinner.

Established report: Leaves are aromatic stimulant and used in snake bite. Essential oil extracted from leaves is used in respiratory catarrh and diphtheria. Leaf juice is applied as eye drop during the cases of infecton (Sinha, 1996).


Vern. Name: Hawai tharak (K), Beera (M)

Distribution: Throughout India, Altai, Europe & Songaria.

Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated in home gardens and jhums.

Annual herbs with hollow stem, glabrous; leaves parinnate, rachis ending in tendril; stipule large, ovate, semicordate, auri cled, irregularly toothed at the base, leaflets 4-6 pairs, ovate or elliptic, toothed, petiole ending in a branched tendril; flowers purple, peduncles 1-few flowered equally or exceeding the stipules, standard pink wings deep purple; pod turgid, 3-5 seeded, reticulate, seeds compressed angular smooth greenish ellow.

Fls. & Frts.: October-March


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Young shoots, pods & seeds

Food:

Young shoots and pods are used as vegetables.

Dried seeds are taken as pulses.

Established report: Pods are used as vegetable and seeds are also used as pulses.

**Vern. Name:** *Kaipat* (K), *Lhapoh* (Mo)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Gujarat, Rajasthan, Haryana & Tropical Asia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild found in wastelands.

Perennial herb with stout truncate root-stock, leaves ovate-oblong, subentire or toothed, flowers in long spike.

**Fls. & Frts.:** Whole year

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 17.9.2010. Roma-1265. (Plate-21-F).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Boiled leaves (50 g) or the decoction (300 ml) are used in urinary trouble, stomach-ulcer, kidney stone case once daily for 1 month.

2. Leaves are taken as blood purifier for women.

**Food:**

Leaves are used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Paste of leaves is applied on cuts and wounds. Leaves are taken as vegetable (Devi et al., 2011b).

245. **Plumbago zeylanica** L., Sp. Pl. 1:151.1753. (Plumbaginaceae)

**Vern. Name:** *Til-hidak* (K & M)

**Distribution:** Through out India & tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild commonly found in bushy areas.

Herb, leaves alternate, ovate, lanceolate, sub-acute and entire; flowers white in elongated spike; fruits capsule, oblong.

**Fls. & Frts.:** July-March

**Specimen examined:** Khoupum. 5.1.2011. Roma-1301. (Plate-22-A).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & roots
Medicinal uses:

About 5 ml of root or leaf decoction is given to expel intestinal worm to children and ¼ of a glass is given to treat fever for adults.

Established report: Root is used to promote appetite and stimulate digestive system and to treat diarrhoea, piles, intermittent fever etc. Paste of root is used in skin diseases including leprosy and is used to induce contraction and abortion. Paste of root is also used in snake bite and tumours (Khare, 2004, John, 2001, Pal & Jain, 1998, Sinha, 1996).


Vern. Name: *Nungshang-panbi* (K & M)

Distribution: Throughout India, Nepal, Bangladesh, Myanmar, Sri Lanka & Thailand.

Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated.

Shrub; leaves opposite, ovate, serrate, pubescent or nearly glabrous; flower in villous and axillary stout, spike in whorls, pinkish; fruits nutlets.

Fls. & Frts.: February-May

Specimen examined: Khoupum. 3.5.2011. Roma-1327.

Etnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves

Medicinal uses:

Fomentation of leaves decoction is applied externally for treatment of piles.

Established report: Leaves are used in piles (Devi, 2010).


Vern. Name: *Khamela* (K & M)

Distribution: Throughout Manipur, Khashi hills, Asian countries & Tropical countries.

Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated.
Perennial herb, aromatic; leaves covered with inum entum, broadly ovate, crenate or doubly serrate, soft hairy on both surface; flowers in terminal and axillary spike, purplish blue in colour; fruits nutlet.

**Fls. & Frts.:** December-June

**Specimen examined:** Muktina. 13.11.2011. Roma-1391. (Plate-22-B).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves

**Hair-lotion:**

Leaves are used in hair lotion.

**Food:**

Leaves are used to make a kind of paste which is used in smoking for its aroma.

**Established report:** It is used as aromatic plant. Leaves are used in hair-lotion (Devi, 2010).

---


**Vern. Name:** Yelang (K), Jilang (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Bangladesh & Chaina.

**Habitat:** Common in swamp areas.

Wild herb; leaves lanceolate or linear-lanceolate, glabrous except the margin and midrib, stipules strigose, cilia longer than the tube; flowers in spicate racemes, dul red.

**Fls. & Frts.:** April-September

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Sarei. 30.7.2010. Roma-1233. (Plate-22-C).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Young shoot

**Medicinal uses:**

Plants are taken as blood purifier.

**Food:**

Young shoots are used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Tenders are used as vegetable (Devi et al., 2011b).

**Vern. Name:** *Inpum* (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Nagaland, China & Malaysia.

**Habitat:** Common in river banks.

Wild growing at the river bank, coiled herb, root stalk woody; stems trailing on the river rock and rooting at the nodes, red brown, hairy; leaves ovate, dull red; flowers in dense peduncled capitate heads, pink or purplish.

**Fls. & Frts.:** April-October

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 4.4.2009. Roma-718.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Tender shoots

**Food:**

*Tender shoots are used as vegetable by Monsang Tribe.

*New uses in ethnobotany*


**Vern. Name:** *Nriangankheang* (K), *Lilhar* (M)

**Distribution:** North-East states of India, South-India & tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Commonly found in swampy areas.

Stem rambling or climbing with stout recurved prickles; leaves with long petiole, peltate and curved prickles, obtuse or subacute, stipules foliaceous, orbicular; flowers white in racemes; fruits nut, globose.

**Fls. & Frts.:** July-February

**Specimen examined:** Noney. 19.4.2010. Roma-1210. (Plate-22-D).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & shoots

**Medicinal uses:**

Boiled leaves and shoots with added ingredients are taken as curry for treatment of dysentery and indigestion.
Food:

Leaves and shoots are used as vegetable.

Established report: Whole plants are used as fish-poison. Plant extract is used as oral contraceptive and used to treat skin diseases (Sinha, 1996).


Vern. Name: **Phakphai** (K & M)

Distribution: North-east States of India, China, Java & Japan.

Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated.

Small herb, stem extensively creeping; leaves elliptic-lanceolate, caudate, acuminate, glabrous or sparsely hairy; flowers in racemes; fruits nut.

Fls. & Frts.: April-August


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Shoot

Medicinal uses:

*Fresh tender shoots (3-5) are taken every day with meals to control hypertension and also used as apetizer.*

Spices:

Shoots are used as spices.

Established report: Tender shoots are consumed as spices. Leaves are used as mouth fresher (Devi *et al.*, 2011a).

*New uses in ethnobotany*


Vern. Name: **Leibak-kundo** (K & M)

Distribution: Throughout India & Tropical countries.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild found in wastelands.
Prostrate succulent herb; leaves opposite, fleshy, ovate-oblong, spatulate, cuneate at base, rounded; flowers solitary, yellow; fruits capsule, ovate with many seeds.

**Fls. & Frts.:** April-September.

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 6.6.2009. Roma-751. (Plate-22-F).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & shoots

**Medicinal uses:**

Fresh leaves and shoots (10g) are orally given once a day for a month to cure leucorrhoea and stomach trouble.

**Food:**

It is used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Plants are used to treat infactions related to mouth, intestine, liver and skin (Sinha, 1996 & Pal & Jain, 1998).


**Vern. Name:** Koklai (K), Mana-manga-longbi (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Nagaland, Western Ghat & North America.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Herb with perennial root stock and slender runner; leaves compound, stipule foliacious, adnate to the slender petiole; flowers yellow, solitary on long axillary peduncle; fruits berry.

**Fls. & Frts.:** Throughout the year

**Specimen examined:** Khoupum. 3.5.2011. Roma1326 (Plate-23-A).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plant

**Medicinal uses:**

One glass of whole plants decoction is used several times in a day for treatment of urinary and kidney trouble, kidney stone cases etc.

**Established report:** Decoction of whole plants is given to treat colds, pneumonia, and abdominal gastric (Devi *et al.*, 2011a).

231

**Vern. Name:** Nungai-peruk (K), Shiivin (M)

**Distribution:** Manipur, Assam, Khashi Hills, Nepal & Bhutan.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

- Creeping; leaves petiolate, denticulate, cordate, ovate; flowers solitary, pink; fruits berry, globose, deep red when ripe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** February-July

**Specimen examined:** Langkhong Kabui. 1.8.2011. Roma-1362. (Plate-23-B).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

- **Parts used:** Whole plant

**Medicinal uses:**

- Boiled extract of whole plant is given to cure stone cases.

**Food:**

- *Ripen fruits are taken by the Kabui children.*

**Established report:** Decoction of whole plant is given to treat kidney stone cases and other stomach trouble (Devi *et al.*, 2011a).

- *New uses in Ethnobotany*


**Vern. Name:** Upongtha (K & M)

**Distribution:** Manipur, Assam, Sikkim & Japan.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

- Tree, young parts tomentose; leaves elliptic or obovate-oblong, acute at base, sub-acuminate at apex, entire, undulate or serrate; flowers greenish or yellowish white; fruits drupe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** April-September

**Specimen examined:** Khoupum. 5.4.2011. Roma-1320.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

- **Parts used:** Bark & leaves
Medicinal uses:

1. Decoction of bark or leaves of *Premna bengalensis*, *Dipterocarpus macrocarpes* and *Terminalia arjuna* are sprayed at the paralysed part for treatment of paralysis.

2. Bathing with the decoction of leaves increases body immune system.

Established report: It is the source of alkaloids and used as herbal medicine (Devi et al., 2011a).


Vern. Name: Chingphak (K & M)

Distribution: Manipur, Sub-tropical Himalya & Bhutan.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild.

Wild herb, stoloniferous with leaves pressed close to the ground, root stocks woody and knobby; stem short, puberulous green, unbranched; leaves subsessile, obovate or nearly rounded, mostly obtuse, rarely acute, cuneate acute at the base, irregularly serrate or dentate, obscurely ciliate along margin, dark green, glabrous; flowers bracteates, white greenish or cream coloured; fruits drupe sub-globose, black, when mature.

Fls. & Frts.: February-June


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Root & tender shoot

Medicinal uses:

About 2 gm of fresh root stock or roots are given along with 1 ml of ginger juice twice a day for one month in asthma, rheumatism and dropsy.

Food:

Young shoots are eaten as vegetable.

Established report: Root is used to treat asthma, rheumatism, leucorrhoea, dropsy etc.

**Vern. Name:** *Oak mana* (K), *Vohnhaa* (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & Thailand.

Wild herb, root stock woody with lateral buds, stem obtusely quadrangular, densely pubescent; leaves opposite, oblong lanceolate broadly elliptic along margin, acute to obtuse apex, dark green above, paler beneath, villous on both surface; flower greenish white; fruits drupe obovoid, smooth, black when mature.

**Fls. & Frts.:** February-August

**Specimen examined:** Bolongdai. 2.4.2011. Roma-1319.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruit

**Food:**

*Raw fruit is edible.*

**Established report:** Leaves are used as remedy for diabetes

*New uses in ethnobotany*

258. *Prunus armeniaca* L., Sp. Pl. 1:47.1753. (Rosaceae)

**Vern. Name:** *Malhei* (K & M)

**Distribution:** North-Eastern states of India and temperate regions of the country and Asia, Russia & Ukrain.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Small tree, shoots are shining with redish brown or brownish olive cortex; leaves rounded or ovoid lightly pubescent, flowers white or pinkish; fruits drupe, rounded.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-May


**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruit

**Food:**

Fruits are used as fresh fruit.
Established report: Fruits are taken as fresh fruit. Fruits are very rich in organic acid, sugar, pectin, vitamin C and vitamin A.

259. **Prunus domestica** L., Sp.Pl. 1:475.1753, **Prunus domestica** Thunb., Fl. Jap. 203.1784. (Rosaceae)

**Vern. Name:** Hekhothai (K), Heikha (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, domesticated.

Tree; leaves ovate-lanceolate, serrate, acuminate, pubescent on under side, midrib glabrous; flowers in pairs, greenish white; fruits drupe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** April-October

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Khullen. 8.5.2009. Roma-742. (Plate-23-C).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruit

**Food:**

Fruits are taken as fresh fruit and are used to make pickle and local wine.

Established report: Fruits are taken as fresh fruit Devi et al., 2012).


**Vern. Name:** Chumbrei (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Nepal & Bangladesh.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Small deciduous tree; leaves long, lanceolate or oblong lanceolate, acuminate, sharply serrate; flowers pink; fruits drupe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** March-October

**Specimen examined:** Keikhu. 27.5.2011. Roma-1215. (Plate-23-D).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits & leaves

**Hair lotion:**

Leaves are used in hair lotion to kill head lice.
Food:

Fruits are used as fresh fruit.

Established report: Fruits are taken as fresh fruit. Crushed leaves are applied on infection of foot of cattle (Sinha, 1996).


*Vern. Name:* *Pungdon* (M), *Hapingtong* (Mo)

*Distribution:* Throughout India & tropical countries.

*Habitat:* Terrestrial, cultivated.

Cultivated small tree, bark exfoliating in thin flakes; leaves opposite elliptic oblong, entire, glabrous above, pubescent beneath; flowers white on axillary peduncles, catky urceolate, partly adnate to the overy below, petals white free; fruits berry, globose or pyriform.

*Fls. & Frts.:* June-November


*Ethnobotanical uses:*

*Parts used:* Leaves & fruits

*Medicinal uses:*

1. About 10 ml of leaves juice mixed with a spoon of honey is given thrice a day for 5 days to cure diarrhoea, cough, stomachache, painful menstruation, miscarriage, uterine bleeding and premature labour in women.

2. 3-5 young shoots are given once a day for 5 days to cure dysentery.

*Food:*

Fruits are eaten as fresh fruit.

Established report: Leaves are used to treat wounds, ulcers, diarrhoea, vomiting, bleeding piles, toothache etc. Bark decoction is given to arrest diarrhoea in children; paste of bark is applied on burn for cooling. Fruits are also used for treating colic, bleeding gums, diarrhoea and dysentery (Pal & Jain, 1998). Fruits are used as fresh fruit.

**Vern. Name:** *Tengnoumanbi* (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over India & Tropical Asia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated in home gardens.

Slender climber with tuberous root; leaves 3 foliolate, stipule attached above the base, lanceolate, leaflets ovate, acute, deltoid at the base, stipulate; flowers rather large, lilac in lax raceme; fruit pod winged, septate between the seeds, wings crisped.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-February

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Khullen. 8.5.2009. Roma-741.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Young fruits

**Food:**

Young fruits are eaten as vegetable.

**Established report:** Fruits are taken as vegetable. Pods are rich in proteins, Vitamin A, B & C (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** *Kaphoi* (K), *Aerichii* (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Myanmar, Nepal, Bangladesh, Persia & China.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Shrub, deciduous, branched; leaves opposite, small, ovate lanceolate, entire, pellucid- punctate; flowers in cyme, inferior; fruits parted by diaphragm.

**Fls. & Frts.:** April-October

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Sarei. 15.5.2009. Roma-744.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruit & leaves
Medicinal uses:
Leaves are made omlet with egg to cure dysentery twice a day with meals for three days.

Dye:
Fruit cover is used to dye black colour.

Food:
Fruits are taken as fresh fruit.

Established report: Fruit juice is used as tonic and laxative. Bark, stem and roots are used as insecticidal (Devi et al., 2011a).


Vern. Name:: *Naspati* (K & M)

Distribution: Throughout India & tropical countries.

Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated.

Tree, deciduous; leaves alternate, simple, petiolate, more or less elliptical, finely serrate, abruptly acuminate, glabrous, glossy, involute bud, stipule linear; flower white; fruit pyriform.

Fls. & Frts.: February-October


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Fruits

Food:
Fruits are eaten as fresh fruit.

Established report: Fruits are used as fresh fruit.


Vern. Name: *Lam-naspati* (K & M)

Distribution: All over Manipur, Nagaland, Kashmir & Nepal.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild common in forest.
Medium sized tree with dense crown; leaves ovate-elliptic, lanceolate, acuminate or caudate, base rounded or truncate, serrulate, stipule adnate; flowers in axillary and terminal umbel, white; fruits pome, ellipsoid, glabrous, depressed at tip.

**Fls. & Frts.:** January-June

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 24.11.2010. Roma-1291.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

*Fruits are crushed and soaked in water over-night. A glass of decant is given orally twice a day for 1 month to cure diabetes.

**Food:**

Fruits are edible.

**Established report:** Fruits are taken as fresh fruit.

*New uses in ethnomedicine*


**Vern. Name:** Uyung (K), Roshuw (M)

**Distribution:** North-East states of India, Eastern & Temperate Asia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial.

**Description:** Deciduous tree, bark warty, dark ashy-grey, deeply furrowed, fibrous; leaves obovate, obovate-oblong, acute or subacuminate, more or less coarsely dentate, serrate, glabrous above when mature, soft, rusty pubescent when young; male spike fascicled at the base of the young shoots, sub-pendulous, cupule hemispherical slightly serious outside, smooth inside, scales ovate, glands ovoid, smooth, style base persistent.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-February

**Specimen examined:** Japhou. 24.111.2011. Roma-1400.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plant
Tasar:
Leaves are used for tasar.

Fire wood:
Stems are used as firewood.

Established report: Leaves are used as feed of tasar worms.


*Vern. Name:* *Mula* (K & M)

*Distribution:* Throughout world.

*Habitat:* Terrestrial, cultivated.

Cultivated annual herb with fusiform root; leaves radical and lower ones lyrate, pinnatifid, upper simple, linear coarsely toothed, hispid; flowers white, lilac with purple veins in long terminal racemes; fruits suberect, hollow or transversely septate, 2-8 seeded.

*Fls. & Frts.:* January-June

*Specimen examined:* Noney. 7.3.2009. Roma-712.

*Ethnobotanical uses:*

*Parts used:* Tuber & flowers

*Food:*

Flowers and tubers are eaten as vegetables.

Established report: Tubers are taken as vegetable.


*Vern. Name:* *Ching-leihao* (K & M)

*Distribution:* Hill Districts of Manipur, Temperate regions, Himalayas, Meghalaya, Nagaland, Arunachal Pradesh, Nilgiri Hills & Bhutan.

*Habitat:* Terrestrial, wild found in forest.
Tree, wild small evergreen; leaves crowded at the end of branches, narrow elliptic or oblong, lanceolate, acute; flowers red in terminal corymbose fascicles, corolla campanulate; fruits ellipsoid.

**Fls. & Frts.:** February-August

**Specimen examined:** Touang. 25.7.2011. Roma-1348.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Flowers

**Medicinal uses:**

Corollas (3-5 petals) are eaten as curry for a week to cure diarrhoea, dysentery, cough, fever and prolong used of the corolla for the control hypertension.

**Food:**

Flowers are taken as vegetable.

**Established report:** Flowers are taken as vegetable. Flowers are used to treat diarrhoea (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** *Tamuthai* (M), *Khomha* (M)

**Distribution:** Nort-East states of India, Myanmar & Tropical countries of Asia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial common in foot-hills.

Wild, deciduous small tree; leaves imparipinnate, petiole winged between upper leaflets, leaflets 4-6 pairs, opposite, lateral, sessile, elliptic ovate or oblong-lanceolate, acuminate, deeply cordate, dentate, densely grey, tomentose beneath; flowers whitish or pale green; fruits drupe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** Augrst –March

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 30.5.2010. Roma-1216.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Young leaves, flowers & fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

A glass of decoction of fruits with a spoon of honey is given for five days to cure stomachache and indigestion.
Food:
Young leaves and flowers are eaten as vegetable.
Fruits are used as fruit.

Hair lotion:
Fruits are used in hair lotion.

Established report: Juice of fruits is given to control any type of loose motion. Boiled water of dried fruits is used as squash.


Vern. Name: Gandria (K), Yembum (M)

Distribution: North-East states of India, Bhutan, Cambodia, China, Laos, Malaysia, Myanmar, Nepal, Thailand & Vietnam.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild.

Shrub; leaves oblong-elliptic, opposite, base cuneate, woolly, acute; flowers in peduncled umbellate cymes, pinkish white; fruits berry.

Fls. & Frts.: October-April


Ethnobotanical uses:
Parts used: Leaves

Medicinal uses:
*Boiled leaves with ingredients are taken after child birth by the mother as blood purifier.

Food:
Leaves are taken as vegetable.

Established report: Leaves are used as vegetable.

*New uses in ethnobotany

**Vern. Name:** *Kege* (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over India, native to Africa & tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in wetlands and road sides and domesticated.

Shrub; leaves alternate with long petiole, 6-11 lobed, ovate, lanceolate, acuminate, serrate; flowers pale yellow, monoecious at terminal panicles, male flowers below, female above; fruits capsule.

**Fls. & Frts.:** Throughout year

**Specimen examined:** Sekjang. 7.8 2011. Roma1369.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & seeds

**Medicinal uses:**

Seed oil is applied on joint pain.

**Hair lotion:**

Leaves are used in hair lotion.

**Sericulture:**

Plants are cultivated for sericulture.

**Established report:** Seed used in dermatosis, seed paste is applied on gouty and rheumatic swelling and boils. Root is used to treat inflammation, fever, asthma, bronchitis and leprosy (Pal & Jain, 1998).


**Vern. Name:** *Atargulap* (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout the world.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Cultivated, shrub, young part tomentose, prickle stout, hooked; leaves imperipinate, leaflets serrate, stipule adnate near the apex; flower varies in colour, long pedicle.

**Fls. & Frts.:** Throughout year

Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Whole plant

Medicinal uses:

Two or three young shoots are eaten for intestinal infection.
Young leaves are taken for constipation.

Ornamental:

Plants are cultivated as ornamental in the surroundings.

Established report: Plants are cultivated as ornamental. Flowers are used to treat fever (Sinha, 1996).


Vern. Name: *Tamuanathai* (K), *Beshirdii* (M)

Distribution: Hill districts of Manipur, Meghalaya, Nagaland, Nepal & Bangladesh.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild in bushy areas.

Wild shrub, young part tomentose, prickle stout, hooked prickle tomentose or glabrate with age, thickly white tomentose beneath; flower purplish pink in the terminal and axillary, simple or panicle lax, tomento corymb, bracts linear; fruit drupe and succulent.

Fls. & Frts.: October-May

Specimen examined: Japhou. 15.4.2009. Roma-726.

Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Fruits

Medicinal uses:

Fruits are eaten to get cure from constipation.

Food:

Fruits are used as fresh fruit.

Established report: Fruits are taken as fresh fruit. Decoction of root is given to treat diarrhea (Sinha, 1996).

**Vern. Name:** Torongkhongchak (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Bangladesh, Nepal & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Common in swamp areas.

Wild annual herb with stout perennial root-stock; leaves oblong or elliptic-ovate, cordate, lower ones with long petioles, the upper ones sessile; flowers small in whorls arranged on long racemes, green; fruits nut brown.

**Fls. & Frts.:** July-December

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 24.7.2010. Roma-1229.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

Leaves paste is prescribed to treat scabies, ringworm and other skin diseases.

**Food:**

*Leaves are used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Paste of leaves is applied externally on ring-worm and burns (Sinha, 1996)

*New uses in ethnobotany


**Vern. Name:** Chu (K), Bechuw (M)

**Distribution:** All over India & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Plants annual with cylindrical stem, solid with distinct nodes and internodes; leaves alternate, 2-ranked, linear to lanceolate with leaf-sheath which is usually split up, rarely closeed; flowers in spikelet panicles; fruits caryopsis, embryo-placed at the base of the seed and outside the endosperm.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-March

**Specimen examined:** Tuisenphai. 20.2.2011. Roma-1307.
Ethnobotanical uses:

**Parts used:** Stem and leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

1. A glass of stem juice is given every day to promote urine flow, strengthens the gums and good for constipation.
2. It is used as diet supplement for curing jaundice till recovered.

**Food:**

Stems are eaten for fresh-juice and used to make molasses and it is cultivated for economy.

**Fodder:**

Leaves are given to cattles.

**Established report:** Stem juice is laxative, cooling and it is used to treat jaundice and hypertension (Sinha, 1996).

---


**Vern. Name:** Koukha (K & M)

**Distribution:** Manipur, Northeastern states of India, China, Nepal & Bangladesh.

**Habitat:** Aquatic and swamp areas.

Aquatic stoloniferous herb with the leaves in deep water strap-shaped when floating with lanceolate or elliptic blades and in shallow water with a hastate or sagittate blade, petiole trigonous; flower white with purple centre; root tuberous.

**Fls. & Frts.:** August-December

**Specimen examined:** Mochikhul. 19.9.2011. Roma-1376.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaf petiole & tuber.

**Medicinal uses:**

*Leaf petioles are used as diuretic and antiscarbutic.

**Food:**

Leaf stalk and tubers are used as vegetables.

**Established report:** Petioles and tubers are used as vegetable.

*New uses in ethnomedicine*

**Vern. Name:** Kekru (K), Thingpuwra (M)

**Distribution:** All over India & Sri-Lanka.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild

Small deciduous tree with grey shining bark covered with rough deciduous scales; leaves compound, pinnate, leaflets 2-3 pairs, terminal pair largest, leaflets lanceolate or elliptic-lanceolate, acute or acuminate, entire base rounded; flowers white in terminal rusty-pubescent panicles; fruits schizocarps, smooth when young and rough when mature.

**Fls. & Frts.:** March-October

**Soecimen examined:** Majorkhul. 12.4.2010. Roma-1208. (Plate-23-E).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Fruits are soaked in water overnight and decant is applied externally on the whole body for curing fever.
2. The fruit pulp is used as toothpaste to protect from toothache and gum infection.
3. Paste of fruit is applied externally over swelling.

**Detergent:**

Fruits are used as detergent.

**Hair-lotion:**

Soaked water of fruits is used as hair lotion, natural shampoo to control dandruff and to promote the hair growth and to strengthen the hair root.

**Established report:** Fruits are used to treat asthma, colic, indigestion, diarrhoea, dysentery, paralysis, arthritis, snake-bite poisoning etc. Roots and barks are used as fish poison (Sinha, 1996). Fruits are used as detergent to clean gold.

**Vern. Name:** *Ushoi* (K), *Intii* (M)

**Distribution:** Assam, E. India, NE India, Nepal, Myanmar & China.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in forest

Tree; leaves elliptic-lanceolate, acute; flowers white, fleshy, solitary; fruits capsule.

**Fls. & Frts.:** July-March

**Specimen examined:** Heibunglok. 26.12.2010. Roma-1299.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Stem, flower & shoots

**Socio-religious:**

The flowers are put on head in festivals for its fragrance by the girls of Kabui Tribe.

**Timber:**

Stem is used in furnitures, house building and oar making.

**Food:**

Shoots are taken as fresh vegetable.

**Established report:** Stem is used as timber. Tender shoots are taken as vegetable (Devi *et al.*, 20011b).


**Vern. Name:** *Khai* (K), *Nung-panbi* (M)

**Distribution:** All over India, Tropics of Africa, America & Australia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in wastelands.

Herb, branched; leaves simple, opposite or 3-rarely whorled, lanceolate or elliptic-lanceolate, serrate; flowers small, white in axillary racemose; fruits capsule, small ovoid or globose.

**Fls. & Frts.:** Throughout year

**Specimen examined:** Heibunglok. 13.8.2010. Roma-1245. (Plate-24-A).
Ethnobotanical uses:
Parts used: Whole plants
Medicinal uses:

About 10-15 plants are boiled in 1 litre of water till the amount is 2/3. A glass of boiled extract is given three times a day for one month to treat gall stone cases, diabetes and jaundice.

Other uses:

*It is used to prepare local liquor.

Established report: Leaves are used as vegetable. Paste of leaves is used as remedy for headache. Decoction of whole plants is used for renal trouble, diabetes, fever, cough, bronchitis, skin diseases and gargle for toothache (Khare, 2004).

*New uses in ethnobotany


Vern. Name: *Yenakhad* (K), *Ekha-hna* (M)

Distribution: All over Manipur, Nepal & China.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild common in foot hills.

Wild herb with condensed stem; leaves opposite, elliptic obtuse, crenate, rounded or cordate base; flowers in long narrow racemes.

Fls. & Frts.: June –December

Specimen examined: Keithelmanbi. 2.11.2009. Roma-790. (Plate-24-B).

Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaf

Medicinal uses:

1. Half a glass of leaves extract is given with a spoon of honey twice a day for a week to cure fever, diarrhoea, diabetes, dysentery, stomach and intestinal problems.

2. One or two leaves are taken every day to control hypertension.

Established report: Plants are used as remedy for fever, diabetes and hypertension (Devi, 2010).

**Vern. Name:** Dash-kush (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over India & tropical Asia.

**Habitat:** Widely cultivated in jhum fields and home gardens.

Annual, root tuber, stem climber with tendrils; leaves broad-ovate to triangular-ovate, angled but scarcely or shallowly lobed, the points apiculate, entire; corolla cup shaped to nearly rotate, deeply 5-lobed, anther free; fruits mostly pyriform.

**Fls. & Frts.:** April-February

**Specimen examined:** Luinoumphai. 3.8.2011. Roma-1367.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits

**Food:**

Fruits are used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Fruits are taken as vegetable.


**Vernacular name:** Thoiding-amuba (K), Lhimi (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India

**Habitat:** Terrestrial. Cultivated in jhum fields

Erect annual herb; leaves variable, simple and some are pinnately compound, lower leaves having long petiole, base rounded, apex obtuse, subentire to irregularly serrate-dentate, apex acute or obtuse, upper leaves shorter-petioled, ovate-oblong to oblong-lanceolate or linear, entire, acute; flower white or pink with darken marking in racemes; fruits capsule, oblong, quadrangular, seeds black.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-March

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 17.9.2010. Roma-1264.
Ethnobotanical uses:
Parts used: Leaves & seeds

Medicinal uses:
1. Seed oil is boiled with a piece of cotton for about 5 min and cooled. Then the cotton is applied to cuts.
2. A piece of cotton is dipped into fresh seed oil and put it on the head to relieve headache.

Hair lotion:
Leaves are used as hair lotion.

Established report: Fresh leaves are used in kidney and bladder infection. Seeds are used as emollient, diuretic and health tonic. Paste of seeds with butter is useful in piles, burns and skin ulcers. Decoction of seeds is given to cure cough; seed and seed oil are used in dysentery and urinary complain (Pal & Jain, 1998).


Vern. Name: Chu-chu-rangmei (K & M)

Distribution: All over Manipur and warmer parts of India & tropical Asia.

Habitat: Terrestrial, both wild and cultivated.

Glabrous unarmed, soft, wooded shrub with slender terete branches; leaves pinnate, leaflets many, linear-oblong, membranous, very shortly petiolate; flowers in lax, axillary racemes; corolla yellow; fruits pod twisted.

Fls. & Frts.: August-December


Ethnobotanical uses:
Parts used: Young shoots & fruits

Food:
Young shoots and fruits are used as vegetables and taken as fresh or cooked.

Established report: Plants are used as biofertilizer and seeds are taken as pulses. Juice of leaves is given to treat cough and fever (Sinha, 1996)

**Vern. Name:** *Sal* (K & M)

**Distribution:** North-East states of India, Central parts of India & Myanmar.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild found in forest.

Deciduous tree, tomentose; leaves ovate-oblong; flowers subsessile in terminal axillary racemose panicles, yellow or creamy; calyx segment densely yellowish, pubescent, ovate or triangular; petals silky outside, glabrous inside; ovary hairy; fruits ovoid, 5-winged, 3 large and 2 small.

**Fls. & Frts.:** March-August

**Specimen examined:** Khoupum. 3.5.2011. Roma-1328.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Stem

**Timber:**

Stem is used as timber to make furnitures and other materials.

**Established report:** It is used as timber. Resin is used in dysentery (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** India, Tropical Asia

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild found in wastelands.

Herb, wild, pubescent; leaves lanceolate to linear, acute at base, apex acute, coarsely or remotely serrate, petiole small; flowers solitary, light yellow.

**Fls. & Frts.:** September-April

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 1.11.2011. Roma-1388.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Above ground parts

**Broom:**

Plants are used as broom.

**Established report:** Root is used as coolant in urinary diseases, fever and stomache (Sinha, 1996).

**Vern. Name:** *Uhal* (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & Tropical Asia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild

Herb, wild, young parts usually pubescent; leaves orbicular to sub-orbicular to ovate, cordate at base, apex acute to acuminate, serrate, stipule linear, filiform; flowers solitary, axillary, light yellow in colour.

**Fls. and Frts.:** Whole year

**Specimen examined:** Tousem. 8.10.2011. Roma-1381.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plan

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Leaf or root decoction is given to cure diarrhoea in pregnant women.
2. Leaf paste is applied on cuts.

**Broom:**

Plants are used as broom.

**Established report:** It is used in fever, urinary disorder, diarrhoea and root bark is used in the treatment of leucorrhoea and gonorrhoea (Devi *et al.*, 2011a).


**Vern. Name:** *Urom-shumjit* (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India & Tropical Asia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Herb, cultivated; leaves ovate-oblong, lanceolate or rhomboid, obtuse at base, apex acute to acuminate, serrate, stipule filiform; flowers solitary, axillary, yellow.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-December

**Specimen examined:** Noney. 2.8.2009. Roma-771.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Above ground part
Broom:

Plants are used as broom.

Established report: Fruit paste is applied on forehead to relieve headache. Whole plants are used in the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis and rheumatism. Paste of root is used in snake-bite (Pal & Jain, 1998).


Vern. Name: *Nga-riichii* (M)

Distribution: Throughout India Tropical & Subtropical countries.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild in forest

Climber with prickly stems; leaves simple, alternate, elliptic-ovate, stipules modified into tendril; flowers greenish yellow in umbels; fruits berries red when ripe.

Fls. & Frts.: March-October


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Flowers & root

Medicinal uses:

50 – 70 ml of root decoction is given orally once a day for a week for the treatment of leucorrhoea.

Food:

Flowers are taken as vegetable only by the Monsangs.

Established report: Decoction of roots is given in gonorrhoea and with goat milk to check blood dysentery (Pal & Jain, 1998).


Vern. Name: *Leipung khanga* (K & M)

Distribution: All over India, China, Malaysia & Philippines.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.
Herb, branched with spine; leaves ovate, sparsely prickly cuneate or truncate; flowers purplish white in racemose helicoid cyme, calyx prickly persistent; fruits berry, globose, dark yellow when ripe, glabrous.

**Fls. & Frts.:** March-November

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 10.10.2010. Roma-1276. (Plate-24-C).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Fruits are crushed with honey and given in cough, fever, stomachache, toothed, diarrhoea, disentery etc.
2. Fruits are prescribed to skin diseases.

**Food:**

Fruits are eaten as vegetable.

**Established report:** Fruits and roots are used to treat asthma, diabetes, worm, cough, toothache and fever (Devi *et al.*, 2011a).


**Vernacular name** Khamen-akhabi (K), Tampu-kha (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Nagaland, Brazil & China.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Herb, branched with spine; leaves large, ovate, sparsely prickly cuneate or truncate; flowers purple in racemose helicoid cyme, calyx prickly persistent; fruits berry, globose green, yellow when ripe, ridged and having bitter taste.

**Fls. & Frts.:** Throughout year

**Specimen examined:** Noney. 19.9.2010. Roma-1271.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruit

**Medicinal uses:**

Fruits are commonly used in hypertension, diabetes, stomach trouble and piles.
Food:

Fruits are used as vegetable as raw or cooked.

Established report: Fruits are used in hypertension, diabetes, cough and dysentery. Fruits are taken as vegetable.


Vern. Name: *Panthao* (K), *Tampu* (M)

Distribution: All over India & tropical countries.

Habitat: Terrestrial, cultivated.

Herb, branched with spine; leaves large, ovate, sparsely prickly cuneate or truncate; flowers purple in racemose helicoid cyme, calyx prickly persistent; fruits berry, long, curved, dark-purple, glabrous and dark yellow when ripe.

Fls. & Frts.: Throughout year


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves & fruits

Medicinal uses:

Smoke of dried leaves is inhale for the treatment tonsilitis.

Food:

Fruits and leaves are used as vegetable.

Established report: Fruits are used as vegetable.


Vern. Name: *Siphai-khamen* (K & M)

Distribution: North-East states of India, Western Ghat & America.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild in wastelands.

Stout prickly undershrub; leaves ovate-acute, cordate at base, lobed or angled, hirsute, prickly on both surfaces and petiole; flowers white in lateral racemes; fruits berry, globose, green with white ridge, dark yellow when ripe.

Fls. & Frts.: April-December

Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Fruit

Medicinal uses:

Ripe fruit juice is applied in toothache.

Established report: Juice of fruits and leaves is applied on muscle pain and joint pain. Pounded root is applied to gums to relieve from toothache (John, 2001).


Vern. Name: *Thumtan-nuang* (K), *Morokmanbi* (M)

Distribution: Throughout India, Tropical & Sub-tropical countries.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild found in wastelands.

Annual herb, pubescent; leaves ovate or ovate-lanceolate, glabrous, subentire, thin, acuminate; flowers small, white in umbellate cyme, 3-8 flowers in a inflorescence, calyx persistent; fruits small, berry, black when ripe.

Fls. & Frts.: May-November


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves

Medicinal uses:

At the time of child birth, boiled leaves are put on the abdomen of pregnant mother to relieve pain by the Monsang people.

Food:

Leaves are used as vegetable.

Established report: Leaf juice is used in urinary trouble, dysentery and piles. Plant decoction is used as tonic against anaemia and fresh leaf paste is useful as laxative. Ripe fruits are remedy of dog-bite (Pal & Jain, 1998).


Vern. Name: *Sauthai* (K), *Khanga* (M)

Distribution: Warmer parts of India, China, Malaysia, America & Philippine.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild in wastelands.
Herb or under shrub, branched stelate-tomentose with short prickles; leaves ovate-lanceolate, entire or slightly lobed, cordate, usually without prickles; flowers white in lateral cyme calyx grandularly hairy; fruits berry, globose, smooth, yellow or orange-red when ripe.

**Fls. & Frts.**: April-December

**Specimen examined**: Keikhu. 4.7.2009. Roma-763. (Plate-24-F).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used**: Fruits

**Medicinal uses**:

Steamed fruits (3-5) are orally taken daily for a week in toothache, cough, fever and dysentery and prolong use for diabetes.

**Food**:

Fruits are eaten as vegetable.

**Established report**: Root paste and fruits are used to recover food-poisoning. Fruits are used to treat toothache and skin diseases. Root extract is given to treat malaria (Pal & Jain, 1998).


**Vern. Name**: *Alu* (K&M)

**Distribution**: Throughout India & tropical countries.

**Habitat**: Terrestrial, cultivated.

Cultivated, annual herb; leaves opposite, pinnate; flowers solitary, white; fruit berry.

**Fls. & Frts.**: February-May

**Specimen examined**: Keikhu. 27.5.2009. Roma-748.

**Ethnobotanical uses**:

**Parts used**: Young leaves & tubers

**Medicinal uses**:

Paste of tubers is applied on burns and on head to relive headache.

**Food**:

Leaves and tubers are used as vegetable.
Established report: Fruits are taken as vegetable. Paste of tuber is applied on burn (Sinha, 1996).


Vern. Name: *Khomthokpi* (K & M)

Distribution: All over Manipur, West Bengal & Bangladesh.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild.

Annual herb; leaves lanceolate or ovate-lanceolate, entire-serrate rarely runcinate; capitula axillary or in terminal racemes; fruits achene.

Fls. & Frts.: December-June


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Tenders leaves

Food:

Tenders are taken as vegetable and plants are used as fodder.

Established report: Plants are used as fodder. Root extract is given to treat jaundice (Sinha, 1996).


Vern. Name: *Tamirthai* (K), *Tutu* (M)

Distribution: Throughout India & Tropical Asia.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild and domesticated

Deciduous tree with grey bark with pleasant aromatic smell; leaves pinnate crowded at the ends of branches, leaflets 10-20 pairs; fruits drop fleshy, ovoid, yellowish at mature.

Fls. & Frts.: March-December

Specimen examined: Monsang Pantha. 5.3.2011.

Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Bark, leaves & fruits
Medicinal uses:

1. Bark and seed juice is applied externally on ringworm and other skin diseases.
2. A glass of stem or leaves decoction is given every day for a week for treating blood in stool.
3. Decoction of bark with cow milk (a glass twice a day before meals for five days) is prescribed to cure dysentery.

Food:

Fruits are used to make pickle and taken as curry of fresh fruit.

Established report: Bark is used in vomiting diarrhoea, dysentery; roots are given for regulating menstruation (Sinha, 1996).

298. **Stachytarpheta cayennensis** (Rich.) Vahl., Enum. Pl. 1:208.1804; *Stachytarpheta cayennensis* Schauer, Prodr. 11:562.1847. (Verbenaceae)

Vern. Name: *Tharoi pijup angouba* (K & M)

Distribution: Throughout India & Tropical America.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild in wastelands.

Wild herb, branched, quadrangular, erect, solid; leaves simple decussate, opposite, ovate to ovate-elliptic, serrate to slightly crenate with forward pointing, acute or subobtuse apex, slightly cuneate or obtuse at base; flowers white in spike terminal and axillary, pubescent, terete, stout 3-6 flowered at a time, sessile depressed calyx.

Fls. & Frts.: June-February


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Whole plant

Medicinal uses:

Paste of leaves is used to cuts and wounds.

Broom:

The plant is used as broom.

Established report: It is used for treating intestinal worms, venereal diseases, ulcers, dropsy and stomach trouble.

**Vern. Name:** Tharoi pijup higok (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Tropical Asia & America.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in wastelands.

Herb, branchlets quadriangular; leaves opposite, ovate to ovate-elliptic, sharply serrate, teeth acute; flowers in spike, sessile, blue in colour; fruits oblong, black.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-February

**Specimen examined:** Tupul. 20.2.2011. Roma-1308.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & bark

**Medicinal uses:**

About 5ml. of leaf or bark juice mixed with one spoon of honey is given twice a day for one month to treat stomach disorder and gastric.

**Broom:**

Plants are used to make broom.

**Established report:** Juice of leaves is used to remove cataracts. Decoction of bark is given to diarrhoea and dysentery.


**Vern. Name:** Yerum-keirum (K), Aarchii (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, temperate areas of India, Western Tibet & Temperate Countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in wasteland areas.

Wild perennial herb, trailing over bushes; leaves membranous, lower leaves shortly petioled, acute, sometimes ciliate; flowers axillary, sepals lanceolate, petals with diverting lobes; fruits capsule ovoid, rather, exceeding the sepals, peduncles deflexed, curved at the top, seed globose tubercled.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-October

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Changning. 27.4.2009. Roma-735.
Ethnobotanical uses:

**Parts used:** Tender shoots & leaves

**Food:**

Tender shoots and leaves are used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Tender shoots and leaves are used as vegetable.


**Vern. Name:** *Kum* (K & M)

**Distribution:** Manipur, Meghalaya, Assam & Bangladesh.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, Cultivated

Shrub; leaves sessile ovate oblong; flowers blue in colour, dense panicle spike, usually opposite with bracts ovate and deciduous.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-March

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 15.4.2009. Roma-727. (Plate-24-D).

Ethnobotanical uses:

**Parts used:** Leaves

**Dye:**

Leaves are used for dying of black colour.

**Established report:** It is used as dying material. Leaves are astringent, diuretic and flowers are used in rheumatism (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** *Sanarei* (K), *Perumrii* (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Native to Mexico, Tropical & Sub-tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

Annual, herb, stout, branching with glabrous angular stem; leaves strong-scented, pinnate, 11-17 segmented, lanceolate, acute or altenulate at apex, serrate; flowers solitary, lemon-yellow to orange in head, rays many, involucre companulate, pappus scally.

**Fls. & Frts.:** August-December

**Specimen examined:** Langthabal Khoupum. 20.10.2010. Roma-1248.
Ethnobotanical uses:

**Parts used:** Leaves & flowers

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Leaf paste is applied to treat boils and wounds.
2. Leaf juice is used for treatment of scabies and other skin diseases and it as applied on piles.

**Ornamental:**

It is cultivated as ornamental and flower is used as hair decoration.

**Insecticide:**

Paste of leaves is used as insecticide.

**Established report:** Leaves are used to treat rheumatism, colds, bronchitis, piles, kidney trouble, muscular pain, earache, ophthalmia & boils (John, 2001). Plants are cultivated as ornament.


**Vern. Name:** *Baangtames* (K), *Mangke* (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, native to Africa & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

Tree with spreading crown and shallow fissured, dark gray rough bark; leaves alternate, paripinate, leaflets 10-20 pairs, subsessile, oblong-elliptic, stipule caducous, linear, glabrescent; flower small yellow with pinkish stripes in short terminal raceme; fruit pod indehiscent, curved, compressed, constricted between the seeds, pericarp crustaceous, scurfy.

**Fls. & Frts.:** March-December

**Specimen examined:** Langkhong Kabui. 1.8.2011. Roma-1361.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruit & bark

**Medicinal uses:**

1. About 10 g of ripen fruit is crushed with 10 gm of molasses and one banana, is given twice a day for 5 days to cure blood dysentery.
2 Decoction of bark (50 ml) is given twice daily for a week to cure diarrhoea.

**Food:**

Fruit is eaten as sour fruit and it is used to make a delicacy in grand feast.

**Established report:** Leaf paste is used on swelling of ankles, fractures and seed powder is used as fish poison (Pal & Jain, 1998). Raw fruits are eaten and in the states of Southern India, it forms an ingredient of delicacy.


**Vern. Name:** Teak (K & M)

**Distribution:** North East states of India and warmer parts of India, Myanmar, Thailand, Laos, Malayasia & Java.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and cultivated.

Large tree, branched quadrangular, stellately tomentose; leaves large opposite, ovate, cuneate at both ends, mature leaves with hard tomentum beneath; panicle large; flower numerous, small, corolla white; fruit drupe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-December

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 5.12.2011. Roma-1417.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Tender & stem

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Tender shoot is cooked with fresh prawn and given as blood purifier.
2. A glass of shoot decoction is given twice a day for one month to improve health condition to unhealthy children.

**Timber:**

It has high expensive value about Rs. 400-600/ft³ as timber and used to make high quality furnitures.

**Established report:** Paste of powdered wood is recommended for toothache and used internally to treat stomach trouble. Decoction of bark is used to treat bronchitis and dysentery. Paste of seeds is applied on ringworm (Pal & Jail, 1998).

**Vern. Name:** *Manahei* (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Khasi Hills, Peninsular region, Myanmar & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild, common in forest.

Medium sized, deciduous tree; leaves sub-opposite, lanceolate or oblong-lanceolate to elliptic, petiole with 2 prominent glands; flowers in spike; fruits pointed at both ends

**Fls. & Frts.:** February-October

**Specimen examined:** Luinuomphai. 3.8.2011. Roma-1366. (Plate-24-E).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

Chewing of fruit is prescribed in mouth ulcer, other mouth infections and bad breath.

**Established report:** Decoction is used in gastric pain and seeds are antiseptic and used in fever, dysentery, Toothache and gum bleeding (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** *Pangteknoithai* (K), *Monjamhei* (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur and North-Eastern India, E. Himalaya & Bangladesh.

**Habitat:** Common in Foot hills climbing the trees and usually domesticated.

Wild, climber; leaves trifoliate, leaflets elliptic, lanceolate, serrate, acuminate, glabrous; tendrils leaf opposed, slender, simple; flowers in axillary cymes, shorter than the petiole, tetramerous, green; fruits globose, 2-4 seeded.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-February


**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Tender shoots, leaves & fruits.
Medicinal uses:
Tender shoots or young leaves (10 g) are given twice a week as fresh or cooked to check diabetes and hypertension.

Food:
Tender shoot, leaves and fruits are used as vegetable. Fruits are used to make a delicacy in grand feast.
Ripen fruits are eaten raw.

Established report: Fruits are taken as sour fruit.


Vern. Name: *Ningthou-kgongli* (K & M)

Distribution: Throughout India & Tropical countries.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild found in bushy areas.

Climber; leaves ovate or orbicular; flowers minute, greenish yellow in axillary and terminal racemes, male flowers clustered, female flowers solitary; fruits drupe.

Fls. & Frts.: January-July

Specimen examined: Rangpang. 10.3.2011. Roma-1313.

Ethnobotanical uses:
Parts used: Leaves

Medicinal uses:
Juice (10-15 ml) of leaves or stem is given twice a day for 2 weeks to treat malaria and for a week in diarrhoea, dysentery & vomiting.

Established report: Leaves and stems are used in diarrhoea, dysentery, gonorrhoea, urinary diseases, gout etc. and often as antipyretic. Root is used for treating leprosy (Sinha, 1996).

**Vern. Name:** Tairen (K), Teren (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Bangladesh, China, Nepal, Myanmar, Pakistan, Malaysia & Australia.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild.

Tree with dense crown; leaves opposite, pinnate, leaflets 4-15 pairs, lanceolate or ovate-lanceolate, acuminate, base unequal, the larger rounded, smaller acute, entire or undulate, glabrous; flowers white in large drooping, pubescent; fruits capsule, oblong.

**Fls. & Frts.:** February-August

**Specimen examined:** Chingmeirong. 3.7.2009. Roma-759.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Leaf juice is applied to scabies and other skin diseases.
2. Paste of leaves is used in cuts and wounds.

**Socio-religious:**

Plants are used in socio-religious ceremonies by the Monsang Naga tribes. People used to owe the evils and bad spirits to the plants.

**Established report:** Bark is used for treating fever, itching, headache, scabies dysentery and to promote healing of ulcers (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** Heikak (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over India, South-easten Asia & Tropical Africa.

**Habitat:** Aquatic common in lakes, domesticated in ponds.

Aquatic free floating herb with long stoloniferous stem; leaves rhomboid rosette, leaf stalk with air bladders, dark green above, reddish-purple and pubescent beneath; flowers solitary, axillary, white; fruits drupe.

**Fls. & Frts.:** July-December

Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Stolon, leaves & fruit

Medicinal uses:

Leaves and stolons are taken as curry twice in a week, helps to check diabetes.

Food:

Whole plants are used as vegetable and fruits are edible.

Established report: Fruits are coolant and useful in diarrhoea and bilious infections and leaf and fruit juice is taken orally in diarrhea (Devi et al., 2011a).


Vern. Name: Shanthak (K)

Distribution: Foot hills of Manipur, Nagaland, Meghalaya, Asian countries & Nez Zealand.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild in foot hills.

Annual herb; leaves variable, ovate-cordate, acuminate, crenate or serrate with stiff stinging hairs; flowers monoecious in peduncled cymes.

Fls. & Frts.: June-October


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Shoots

Food:

*Shoots are taken as vegetable.

Established report: Leaves are used to treat cell injury and it contains antioxidant property.

*New uses in ethnobotany

**Vern. Name:** Kung (K), Urei (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout Manipur, North-eastern states of India, Nepal, China, Australia, Myanmar & Sri Lanka.

**Habitat:** Epiphyte, wild and domesticated.

- Epiphytic orchid with stout stem; leaves thickly coriaceous, linear-oblon; flowers yellow or bluish purple with dark spots in racemes; fruits capsule.

**Fls. & Frts.:** March-August


**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & stem

**Medicinal uses:**

- Paste of leaves and stem is applied on bone fracture.

**Ornament:**

- Plants are domesticated as ornament.

**Established report:** Paste of root is used to treat bronchitis, asthma, rheumatism, fever, toothache and bone fracture. Paste of bark and common salt is used to cure hepatitis (Pal & Jain, 1998).


**Vern. Name:** Hawai mubi (K), Tichonbi (Mo)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur and North-Estern India, Southeast Asia & Africa.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated in jhums and home gardens.

- Herb, stem stout erect; leaflets 2-3 pairs, elliptic lanceolate; flower white with black heart; fruits pod.

**Fls. & Frts.:** September-April

**Specimen examined:** Noney. 7.3.2009. Roma-711.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Young shoots & fruits

**Food:** Young shoots and pods are used as vegetables.

**Established report:** Pods are used as vegetable

**Vern. Name:** Sagol-hawai (K), Sekourbee (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Tropical & Subtrical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated in jhums.

Cultivated, erect or twining herb; leaves trifoliate, leaflets ovate-elliptic ovovate-rhomboid, scattered, adpressed hairs on both sides, sub-obtuse; flowers yellow at the end of short peduncles; fruits pod, seeds black.

**Fls. & Frts.:** September-December

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 5.12.2011. Roma-1419.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Part used:** Seeds

**Food:**

Seeds are used as pulses.

**Established report:** Seeds are taken as pulses.


**Vern. Name:** Pikhongjai (K & M)

**Distribution:** North-East states of India, Assam, Meghalaya, Asian countries, Europe & South Africa.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in wastelands and gardens.

Wild, stem slender, copiously branched, herb; leaflets 3-4 pairs, obtuse or acute; flowers on copious axillary peduncles, 1-2 flowers, corolla lilac, distinctly exerted; fruit pod linear oblong, 4 seeded.

**Fls. & Frts.:** October-April

**Specimen examined:** Liwa Changning. 27.4.2009. Roma-734.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Young shoots

**Food:** Young shoots are used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Tender shoots are taken as vegetable in singju and fruits are edible.

**Vern. Name:** *Pong-hawai* (K), *Biinhe* (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Sri Lanka, Nepal, Ghana & China.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

- Cultivated climber; leaves trifoliate, leaflets ovate, rhomboid, variable, acute, entire; flowers purplish in short capitate racemes; fruits pod depressed between seeds, glabrous and green.

**Fls. & Frts.:** July-December

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 24.11.2011. Roma-1402.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Pods & young leaves

**Socio-religious:**

- Pods are used socio-religiously in the ‘Bhorin-Esha’ (a festival of Monsang Naga tribe) by the ‘Monsang’.

**Food:**

- Pods and young leaves are taken as vegetable.

**Established report:** Pods are used as vegetable.


**Vern. Name:** *Hawai-ashangbi* (K), *Beefuw* (M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Myanmar, Sri Lanka & China.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated.

- Cultivated climber; leaves trifoliate; leaflets ovate-elliptic, acute, entire; flowers purplish in short capitate racemes; fruit pods, long, light-green in colour.

**Fls. & Frts.:** April-August

**Specimen examined:** Rangpang. 25.7.2011. Roma-1345.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Pods & young leaves

**Food:**

- Young leaves and pods are used as vegetable.
- Pods are taken as fresh or cooked.

**Established report:** Pods are used as vegetable.

**Vern. Name:** Yeliksibi (K & M)

**Distribution:** Throughout India, Afghanistan, Pakistan, Malaysia & Japan.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in bushy areas.

Wild shrub; leaves simple trifoliate petiolate, leaflets sessile ovovate or ovate oblong, entire, glabrous above, tomentose beneath; panicle white tomentose; corolla tomentose, lavender blue. It is common in damp or moist waste lands along drains and road sides.

**Fls. & Frts.:** January-August

**Specimen examined:** Tamei. 16.6 2010. Roma-1221.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plant

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Dry leaves with a little amount of honey, tablet is made about 50 mg. One tablet is given before breakfast for one month to cure piles.
2. Leaf juice is used to cure scabies, skin diseases, cuts and wounds.
3. About 5ml of leaf juice mixed with a spoon of honey is given to relief toothache once a day till the pain subsides.

**Insecticide:**

Paste of leaves is used as insecticide.

**Established report:** Fresh leaves are aromatic and used as antibiotic. Juice extract from stem and leaves are used in sprain, skin diseases and orally given in dysentery, diarrhoea, ulcer and decoction of leaves is used as fomentation in piles (Sinha, 1996).


**Vern. Name:** Lengam (K), Beting (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Norteastern states of the country, East Asia & Sri Lanka.
Habitat: Terrestrial, wild in forest.

Wild, evergreen small tree with branches; leaves simple, opposite, pointed, elliptic, lanceolate, shining above, pubescent beneath, stipule small, triangular, cuspidate or acuminate; panicles large spreading, pubescent; flowers subsessile interterminal pyramidal panicles, greenish white; fruits capsule, globose.

Fls. & Frts.: January-June


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Inflorescence

Medicinal uses:

Inflorescences are taken as curry, thrice in a week, to control diabetes.

Food:

Inflorescences are used as vegetables.

Established report: Flowers are taken as vegetable (Devi et al., 2011b).


Vern. Name: *Nongleisang* (K & M)

Distribution: All over India, Tropical and Subtropical countries.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild.

Tree; leaves oblong or elliptic-lanceolate, glabrous, serrate with recurved margin; flowers yellowish white in panicles; fruits berry.

Fls. & Frts: October-June


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Leaves

Medicinal uses:

1. Fomentation with leaf decoction is applied for treating piles.
2. Bathing with decoction of leaves is prescribed in skin diseases.

Insecticide: Paste of leaves is used as insecticide.

Established report: Leaves are used in skin diseases. Decoction of leaves is used as fomentation in piles. (Devi et al., 2011a).

**Vern. Name:** Mukthrubi (K), Shenii (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Nagaland, Mizoram, Meghalay, Bangladesh, Bhutan, Indonesia, Laos, Malaysia, Myanmar, Nepal, Thailand, China & Vietnam.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

Aromatic shrub with prickles straight or in curved; leaves imparipinnate, rachis glabrous with foliaceous wings, leaflets 5-11, opposite, narrow to oblong lanceolate, subacute, obtuse or acuminate; flowers yellowish in lax pyramidal, pubescent panicles; seeds black, globose.

**Fls. & Frts.:** April-October

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong, 30.10.2009. Roma-789. (Plate-25-C).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Tender, leaves & fruits

**Medicinal uses:**

1. Decoction of leaves or fruits is prescribed as a gargler in stomachache, bad breath, toothache, bleeding gum etc.

2. Fruits are chewed as mouth freshner.

**Spices:**

Tender shoots, leaves and fruits are used as spices and condiments to cook meat and fish.

**Established report:** Leaves are used as spices. Leaves and seeds are used in chronic fever, indigestion, cough & bronchitis (Sinha, 1996).

**321. Zanthoxylum americanum** Mill., Gard. Dict, ed. 8:2.1768. (Rutaceae)

**Vern. Name:** Ngang (K & M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Lushai-hills, Khashi-hills, United States & Canada.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

Small tree, stem with prickles; leaves bipinate, elliptic to oblong, acute or acuminate, serrulate; flowers in cyme paniculate, greenish yellow; fruits ovoid, subglobose, red when mature, seeds black, shiny
**Fls. & Frts.:** February-November

**Specimen examined:** Tamenglong. 1.11.2011. Roma-1385.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Fruits

**Spices:**

Seeds are used as spices in meat curry and other dishes.

**Established report:** Fruits are taken as spices.

---


**Vern. Name:** Naosek-nambi (K), Bejuur (M)

**Distribution:** Hill districts of Manipur, Northeastern states of India, Sri Lanka to Myanmar, Indo-China, Thailand, Peninsular Malaysia & Java.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild and domesticated.

A prickly shrub or small tree with large pith; bark grey; leaves 3-4 pinnate, rachis and its ramification armed with shortprickles, primary pinnae 6-8 pairs, secondary 3-8 pairs, leaflets 5-9 on the ultimate pinnules, ovate or ovate lanceolate, acuminate, bristly serrulate, base rounded or cordate; flowers small, whitish in extensive panced umbels, panicles much branched, upper corollas, glabrous.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-December


**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves & shoots

**Medicinal uses:**

Fresh leaves (3-5) are taken every day for 3-4 months to treat asthma.

**Spices:**

Leaves and young shoots are used as condiment.

**Food:**

Leaves are used as vegetable.

**Established report:** Leaves are used as spices.

**Vern. Name:** Nauhuam(K), Checha (M)

**Distribution:** All over India, Africa, America & Arab.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated in jhums.

Monoecious annual tall herb with stalk stem, smooth, glabrous, adventitious roots from the lower nodes; leaves with overlapping sheaths, broadly lanceolate blade, hairy above, ciliate on the margin, male flowers in spike-like racemes forming a large panicles, female flowers in axillary spikes with a large leafy bracts, silky long style; fruits grain, large, sub-globose, shining and hard when ripe, surrounding by the base of glume.

**Fls. & Frts.:** July-October

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 8.7.2011. Roma-1343.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Seeds

**Food:**

Seeds are edible. When rice is in shortage, seeds are also used as staple food by both the tribes.

**Firewood:**

Dried plants are used as firewood.

**Established report:** Decoction of the grain is used in hip-bath to relieve piles in Unani system. Root extract is used as drop in nostrils. Paste of male flower is used in skin diseases (Pal & Jain, 1998).


**Vern. Name:** Lam-thabi (K), Rampa-samha (M)

**Distribution:** All over Manipur, Assam, Khasi-hills, Paninsular region, Ava, Africa & Malaysia.

**Habitat:** Wild in bushy areas.
Herb, climber; leaves simple, ovate, cordate, undulate-denticulate, glabrous, tendril slender; flowers in long peduncle, monoecious; fruits globose, ovate, oblong.

**Fls. & Frts.:** June-December

**Specimen examined:** Heibunglok. 2.8.2010. Roma-1237. (Plate-25-Ea &b).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Whole plant

**Medicinal uses:**

Decoction of whole plant is given instead of water to cure jaundice till recovered.

**Established report:** Leaves are given as remedy to cure jaundice (Devi *et al.*, 2011a).

---


**Vern. Name:** Chingi sing (K & M)

**Distribution:** Hill districts of Manipur, Khashi-Hills, Nepal & Thailand.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, wild in hills.

Herb with condensed and small rhizome; leaves, narrowly lanceolate, tapering at the apex, glabrous beneath; flowers greenish white in small purplish black radical spike.

**Fls. & Frts.:** July-February

**Specimen examined:** Monsang Pantha. 5.1.2009. Roma-707. (Plate-25-F).

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves, flowers & rhizome

**Medicinal uses:**

*Juice of rhizome (50 ml) is given with a spoon of honey twice daily for a week to treat cough, cold and fever.*

**Spices:**

Rhizome and flowers are used as spices.

**Established report:** Essential oil is extracted from the rhizome in Thailand.

*New report in ethnobotany*

**Vern. Name:** Zeicharim (K), Thieng (M)

**Distribution:** All over India & Tropical countries.

**Habitat:** Terrestrial, cultivated in jhums.

Herb with rhizome; leaves, narrowly lanceolate, tapering at the apex, glabrous beneath; flowers greenish in small purplish black radical spike.

**Fls. & Frts.:** July-February

**Specimen examined:** Irang. 16.6.2010. Roma-1220.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Leaves, flowers & rhizome

**Medicinal uses:**

Juice of rhizome (50 ml) is given with a spoon of honey twice a day for a week to treat cough, cold and fever.

**Spices:**

Leaves and rhizomes are used as spices.

Flowers are taken as spices and vegetable.

**Established report:** Rhizome is carminative, stimulant and used in treatment of paralysis and blood circulation (Pal & Jain, 1998).


**Vern. Name:** Kambong (K), Kampong (M)

**Distribution:** Wetlands of Manipur, Assam & China.

**Habitat:** Aquatic, wild and domesticated.

Aquatic perennial herb with well developed stolons and rhizome; clumps erect glabrous very thick and spongy below; infected flower by fungus *Ustilago esculenta* form an elongated rod like structure called ‘kambong’.

**Fls. & Frts.:** August-February

**Specimen examined:** Langthabal Khoupum. 20.12.2010. Roma-1294.

**Ethnobotanical uses:**

**Parts used:** Infected flower
Food:

Fruits are used as vegetable.

Established report: Fruits are edible. Fruits are taken as vegetable in China.


Vern. Name: *Boroi* (K & M)

Distribution: Throughout India, Afghanistan, Africa, Australia, China & Malaysia.

Habitat: Terrestrial, wild, domesticated.

Thorny deciduous tree with much branches; leaves oblong, elliptic, ovate or suborbicular, minutely serrate or apex distinctly toothed; flower greenish yellow in axillary dense fascicles or sessile or short peduncled cymes; fruits oblong, globose or ovoid drupe, fleshy pulp inclosing a hard stony seed.

Fls. & Frts.: October-March


Ethnobotanical uses:

Parts used: Root, bark, leaves & fruits

Medicinal uses:

1. Root paste is used in cuts and wounds.
2. Bark decoction (50 ml) is given twice a day for a week for treatment of dysentery, diarrhea and for long period in piles.
3. Leaves decoction (50 ml) are given twice a day for a week to treat stomachache and diarrhoea and for long period in asthma.
4. Ripen fruits are given to cough, asthma, diarrhoea and vomiting.

Food:

Raw fruits are edible and used to make pickle.

Established report: Paste of leaves is applied externally against headache and skin diseases; pounded bark is also applied externally in rheumatic pain. Juice of bark is given to cure dysentery. Fruits are given in vomiting (Sinha, 1996 & Pal & Jain, 1998). Raw fruits are edible.


4.2. RESULTS OF ETHNOBOTANICAL STUDIES

In the present investigation, 328 plant species belonging to 245 genera and 95 families are reported. The reported plant species in the present work are dicotyledons - 272 plant spp., monocotyledons - 50 plant spp., gymnosperms - 2 plant spp. and pteridophytes - 4 plant spp. as shown in Figs. 4.2.1 and 4.2.2. These two tribes i.e., Kabui and Monsang tribes use different kinds of plants i.e. from small plants like pteridophytes - 4 plant spp., herbs - 153 plant spp. and shrubs - 52 plant spp. to large tree species - 82 plant spp. as shown in Figs. 4.2.3 and 4.2.4. Number of plant species of monocot families and dicot families are shown in Figs. 4.2.5 & 4.2.6 and Figs. 4.2.7 & 4.2.8 respectively.

Kabui and Monsang tribes use these plants for various purposes depending upon their day to day requirement i.e., food, medicine, dye, fibre, fodder, furniture, household material, etc. as shown in Figs- 4.2.11 & 4.2.12. They use herbal medicinal plants to treat many kinds of ailments as given in Fig.-4.2.13. They use different kinds of plants i.e. from small plants like bryophytes, pteridophytes, herbs to large angiospermic tree species for fulfilling different requirements of their traditional life style and culture as shown in Figs. 2 & 3. These collected plants are of different types e.g. herb, shrub, tree and climber (Fig. 4.2.3 & 4.2.4). They use different plant parts like leaves, fruits, stems, roots etc. details of which are given in Figs. 4.2.9 & 4.2.10.

Among these reported plants, the Kabui and the Monsang Naga tribes use 232 plant species as herbal medicine to treat various kinds of ailments (Fig. 4.2.12). A total of 178 plant species are consumed as vegetables and they have indicated number of plant parts for various kinds of usage. Twenty-six (26 nos.) plants are used to treat diabetes (Table 4.2.1), blood purifier-18 plants spp. (Table 4.2.2), jaundice-11 plants spp. (Table 4.2.3), piles-14 plant spp. (Table 4.2.4), asthma-22 plant spp. (Table 4.2.5), leucorrhoea-7 plant spp. (Table 4.2.6), synusitis-3 plant spp. (Table 4.2.7), hypertension-15 plants spp. (Table 4.2.8), cough and fever-37...
Table 4.2.1: Plants used in diabetes by the Kabui and the Monsang tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Andrographis paniculata</em> Nees</td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Leaf</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Azadirachta indica</em> A.</td>
<td>Meliaceae</td>
<td>Tender</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of plants</td>
<td>Family</td>
<td>Part used</td>
<td>Mode of uses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Andrographis paniculata</em> Nees</td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction / Fresh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.2: Plants used as blood purifier by the Kabui and the Monsang tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Andrographis paniculata</em> Nees</td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of plants</td>
<td>Family</td>
<td>Part used</td>
<td>Mode of use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alstonia scholaris (L.) R. Br.</td>
<td>Apocynaceae</td>
<td>Bark</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eclipta prostrata L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hedychotis auricularia L.</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lagenaria siceraria (Molina) Standl.</td>
<td>Cucurbitaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Momordica charantia L.</td>
<td>Cucurbitaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oroxyllum indicum Vent.</td>
<td>Bignonaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Fresh/cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pavetta indica L.</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phlogacanthus thyrsiformis (Hardwick) Mabber.</td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Flowers &amp; leaves</td>
<td>Fresh/cooked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4.2.4: Medicinal Plants used in piles by the *Kabui* and the *Monsang* tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Artimisia nilagirica</em> (Clarke) Pump.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Averrhoa carambola</em> L.</td>
<td>Averrhoaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Azadirachta indica</em> A. Juss.</td>
<td>Meliaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Canthium parviflorum</em> Lam.</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Fruits/leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Clerodendrum serratum</em> Spreng.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Tenders/flowers</td>
<td>Fresh/cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cynodon dactylon</em> (L.) Pers.</td>
<td>Poaceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Jatropha curcus</em> L.</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Paederia foetida</em> L.</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Fresh/cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Parkia timoriana</em> Meer.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Seeds</td>
<td>Fresh/cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Phyla nodiflora</em> (L.) Greene</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Solanum gilo</em> Req. ex Donal</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Fresh/cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Tagetes patula</em> L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Xylosma longifolium</em> Clos.</td>
<td>Flacourtiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ziziphus jujuba</em> Lam.</td>
<td>Rhamnaceae</td>
<td>Bark</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.5: Medicinal plants used in asthma by the *Kabui* and the *Monsang* tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Alpinia galanga</em> Hance</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Alpinia officinarum</em> Hance</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Bidens pilosa</em> L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Fresh/cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cajanus cajan</em> (L.) Millsp.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Clerodendrum serratum</em> Spreng.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Tenders/flowers</td>
<td>Fresh/cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Curcuma angustifolia</em> Roxb.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Curcuma aromatica</em> Roxb.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Curcuma Montana</em> Rosc.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of plants</td>
<td>Family</td>
<td>Part used</td>
<td>Mode of use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Datura metal</em> L.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dillenia indica</em> L.</td>
<td>Dilleniaceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ficus hispida</em> L.</td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Laginaria siraria</em> (Molina) Stand.</td>
<td>Cucurbitaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Litsea cubeba</em> Pers.</td>
<td>Lauraceae</td>
<td>Flowers/fruits</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Luffa acutangula</em> (L.) Roxb.</td>
<td>Cucurbitaceae</td>
<td>Fruits Cooked</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lycopersicon esculentum</em> Mill.</td>
<td>Slanaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Pimpinella hastata</em> C.B. Clarke</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Above ground parts</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Premna herbacea</em> Roxb.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ricinus communis</em> L.</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Vitex trifolia</em> L.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Zanthoxylum rhetsa</em> (Roxb.) DC.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Zingiber cassumnar</em> Roxb.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Zingiber officinale</em> Rosc.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ziziphus jujuba</em> Lam.</td>
<td>Rhamnaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.6: Medicinal plants used in Leucorrhoea by the *Kabui* and the *Monsang* Tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Caryota urens</em> L.</td>
<td>Aricaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Clitoria ternatea</em> L.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hedychium greenii</em> Smith.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Holmskioldia sanguinea</em> Retz.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Kaempferia rotunda</em> L.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Tuber</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Portulaca oleracea</em> L.</td>
<td>Portulaceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Smilax perfoliata</em> Lour.</td>
<td>Smilacaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.7: Medicinal plants used in Synusitis by the *Kabui* and the *Monsang* tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Drymaria cordata</em> Wild.</td>
<td>Caryophyllaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Leucus aspera</em> Link.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Oroxylum indicum</em> Vent.</td>
<td>Bignonaceae</td>
<td>Bark</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4.2.8: Medicinal plants used in hypertension by the Kabui and the Monsang tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acmella paniculata (DC.) Jansen</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allium hokerii L.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Fresh/cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allium sativum L.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Bulbs</td>
<td>Fresh/cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centella asiatica (L.) Urban</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
<td>Fresh/cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clerodendrum colebrookianum Walp.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Fresh/cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clerodendrum serratum Spreng.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Tenders/flowers</td>
<td>Fresh/cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crassocephalum crepidioides S. Moore</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Fresh/cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eclipta prostrata L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Fresh/cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eryngium foetidum L.</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Fresh/cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Momordica charantia L.</td>
<td>Cucurbitaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passiflora edulis Sims.</td>
<td>Passifloraceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Fresh/cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polygonum posumbu Bunch-Ham.</td>
<td>Polygonaceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhododendron arboretum Sm.</td>
<td>Ericaceae</td>
<td>Flower</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scutellaria discolor Colebr.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetrastigma bracteolatum Planch.</td>
<td>Vitaceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Fresh/cooked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.9: Medicinal plants used in cough and fever by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Cough /fever</th>
<th>Mode of preparation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abrus precatorius L.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Cough</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adhatoda vasica Nees</td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Leaves &amp; flowers</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Fresh / decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aegle marmelos (L.) Corr.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Cough</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis paniculata Nees.</td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Fresh / decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artemisia nilagirica (C.B. Clarke) Pump.</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves &amp; shoots</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Azadirachta indica A. Juss.</td>
<td>Meliaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canthium parviflorum Lam.</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centella asiatica (L.) Urban</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Fresh / cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrus jambhiri Lush.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Cough</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

286
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Achyranthus aspera L.</td>
<td>Amaranthaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Powder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allium ascalonicum L.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Bulbs</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allium cepa L.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Bulbs</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alstonia scholaris (L.) R. Br.</td>
<td>Apocynaceae</td>
<td>Bark</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ananas comosus (L.) Merr.</td>
<td>Bromeliaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.10: Plants used in diarrhoea / dysentery by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plant Name</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part Used</th>
<th>Preparation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis paniculata Nees</td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antidesma acidum Retz.</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ardisia colorata Roxb.</td>
<td>Myrsinaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artocarpus heterophyllus Lam.</td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Bark</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artocarpus lakoocha Roxb.</td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Bark</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cajanus cajan (L.) Millsp.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camellia sinensis (L.) Kuntze</td>
<td>Ternstroemiaceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cissus adnata Roxb.</td>
<td>Vitaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrus aurantium L.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clerodendrum colebrokianum Walp.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cynodon dactylon (L.) Pers.</td>
<td>Poaceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eryngium foetidum L.</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ficus glomerata Roxb.</td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Young fruits</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ficus tjakela Burm.</td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hibiscus cannabinus L.</td>
<td>Malvaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction / cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hibiscus sabdariffa L.</td>
<td>Malvaceae</td>
<td>Leaves / Fruits</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lantana camara L.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lycopersicon esculentum Mill.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lygodium flexuosum (L.) Sw.</td>
<td>Lygodiaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lysimachia parviflora Baker</td>
<td>Primulaceae</td>
<td>Leaves / Tenders</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mangifera foetida Lour.</td>
<td>Anacardiaceae</td>
<td>Bark</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mangifera indica L.</td>
<td>Anacardiaceae</td>
<td>Bark</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musa paradisiaca L.</td>
<td>Musaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nyctanthes arbor-tristis L.</td>
<td>Oliaceae</td>
<td>Bark</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nymalbo nucifera Gaertn.</td>
<td>Nymphaeaceae</td>
<td>Flower</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxalis corniculata L.</td>
<td>Oxalidaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paederia foetida L.</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phoenix sylvestris (L.) Roxb.</td>
<td>Palmae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phyllanthus emblica L.</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Leaf / bark / root</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polygonum perfoliatum L.</td>
<td>Polygoniaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psidium guajava L.</td>
<td>Myrtaceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Juice / fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Punica granatum L.</td>
<td>Punicaceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhododendron arborium Sm.</td>
<td>Ericaceae</td>
<td>Flowers</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scutellaria discolor Colebr.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Extract / decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sida cordata (Burm.) Borss.</td>
<td>Malvaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solanum anguivi Lam.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solanum torvum Schltld.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spondias pinnata Kurz.</td>
<td>Anacardiaceae</td>
<td>Bark</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tamarindus indica L.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tinospora cordofolia (Willd.)</td>
<td>Menispermaceae</td>
<td>Leaves /stem</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of plants</td>
<td>Family</td>
<td>Part used</td>
<td>Mode of uses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Trapa natans</em> L.</td>
<td>Trapaceae</td>
<td>Leaves / Stolons</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ziziphus jujuba</em> Lam.</td>
<td>Rhamnaceae</td>
<td>Bark</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 4.2.11:** Plants used in boils by the *Kabui* and *Monsang* Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Ageratum conyzoides</em> L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Warmed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Allium cepa</em> L.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Bulb</td>
<td>Warm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Allium sativum</em> L.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Bulb</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Artocarpus heterophyllus</em> Lam.</td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Warm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Basella alba</em> L.</td>
<td>Basellaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Warmed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Clerodendrum indicum</em> Kuntze</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Croton caudatus</em> Geiseler</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ficus hispida</em> L.</td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
<td>Latex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hibiscus rosa-sinensis</em> L.</td>
<td>Malvaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hibiscus schizopetalous</em> (Boulger) Hook.</td>
<td>Malvaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ipomea batatas</em> (L.) Lam.</td>
<td>Convolvulaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Warmed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ipomoea panurca</em> L.</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Boiled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Meyna spinosa</em> Rohyns.</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Warmed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ocimum americanum</em> L.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Seeds</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Plantago erosa</em> Wall.</td>
<td>Plantaginaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Warmed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Tagetes patula</em> L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 4.2.12:** Plants used in sprain, joint pain and muscle pain by the *Kabui* and *Monsang* Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Canthium parviflorum</em> Lam.</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Boiled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Caryota urens</em> L.</td>
<td>Aricaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cuscuta reflexa</em> Roxb.</td>
<td>Convolvulaceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dioscorea bulbifera</em> L.</td>
<td>Dioscoreaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Boiled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dioscorea pentaphylla</em> L.</td>
<td>Dioscoreaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Boiled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eryngium foetidum</em> L.</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Garcinia xanthochymus</em> Hook.</td>
<td>Clusiaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Boiled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Impatients balsamina</em> L.</td>
<td>Balsaminaceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mikania micrantha</em> Kunth.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Boiled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mimosa pudica</em> L.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ocimum americanum</em> L.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Oroxyllum indicum</em> Vent.</td>
<td>Bignoniaceae</td>
<td>Leaves / roots</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Paederia foetida</em> L.</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of plants</td>
<td>Family</td>
<td>Part used</td>
<td>Mode of uses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Phlogacanthus thyrsifloris</em></td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Hardwick) Mabber.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Phlogocanthus curviflorus</em></td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nees</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ricinus communis</em> L.</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Seeds</td>
<td>Oil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.13: Plants used in eye problem by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Cucumis sativus</em> L.</td>
<td>Cucurbitaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Slice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nelumbo nucifera</em> Gaertn.</td>
<td>Nympaeceae</td>
<td>Seeds</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Daucus carota</em> L.</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Tuber</td>
<td>Fresh / cooked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.14: Plants used in toothache by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Acmella paniculata</em> (Wall.ex DC.) R.K. Jansen</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Allium ascalonicum</em> L.</td>
<td>Lilliaceae</td>
<td>Bulbs</td>
<td>Warmed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Allium cepa</em> L.</td>
<td>Lilliaceae</td>
<td>Bulbs</td>
<td>Warmed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Calotropis gigantean</em> (L.) Aiton.</td>
<td>Asclepiadaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Citrus jambhiri</em> Lush.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Helianthus annuus</em> L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>DEcoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lagenaria siceraria</em> (Molina)</td>
<td>Cucurbitaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standl.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Sapindus emarginatus</em> Vahl.</td>
<td>Sapindaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Solanum angiivi</em> Lam.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Solanum myricanthum</em> Dunal.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Solanum torvum</em> Schltdl.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Vitex trifolia</em> L.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Zanthoxylum achantopodium</em> DC.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.15: Plants used in bone fracture by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Eryngium foetidum</em> L.</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Paedaria foetida</em> L.</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Allium sativum</em> L.</td>
<td>Lilliaceae</td>
<td>Bulbs</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Vanda tessellata</em> Hook. ex G.Don</td>
<td>Orchidaceae</td>
<td>Leaves / stem</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4.2.16: Plants used in headache by the *Kabui* and *Monsang* Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Acorus calamus</em> L.</td>
<td>Araceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Aloe barbadensis</em> Mill.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Anisomeles indica</em> Kuntze</td>
<td>Lamiales</td>
<td>Seeds</td>
<td>Oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Benincasa hispida</em> Cong.</td>
<td>Cucurbitaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Brassica campestris</em> L.</td>
<td>Brassicaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Warmed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Caryota urens</em> L.</td>
<td>Arecaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dichrocephala integrifolia</em> Kuntze</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Elsholtzia blanda</em> Benth.</td>
<td>Lamiales</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Isodon ternifolius</em> Kudo.</td>
<td>Lamiales</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
<td>Ash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lycopersicon esculentum</em> Mill.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Musa paradisiaca</em> L.</td>
<td>Musaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nyctanthes arbor-tristis</em> L.</td>
<td>Oliaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Sesamum orientale</em> L.</td>
<td>Pedaliaceae</td>
<td>Seeds</td>
<td>Oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Solanum tuberosum</em> L.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Tubers</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.17: Plants used in cuts and wounds by the *Kabui* and *Monsang* Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Arundo donax</em> L.</td>
<td>Poaceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Azadirachta indica</em> A. Juss.</td>
<td>Melliaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cassia fistula</em> L.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Croton caudatus</em> Geiseler</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Curcuma domestica</em> Val.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cynodon dactylon</em> (L.) Pers.</td>
<td>Poaceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Duranta repens</em> L.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eclipta prostrata</em> L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Equisetum ramosissimum</em> Desf.</td>
<td>Equisetaceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eupatorium cannabium</em> L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eupatorium nodiflorum</em> Wall.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eupatorium odoratum</em> L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lantana camara</em> L.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mikania micrantha</em> Kunth.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ocimum tenuiflorum</em> L.</td>
<td>Lamiales</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Sesamum orientale</em> L.</td>
<td>Pedaliaceae</td>
<td>Seeds</td>
<td>Oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Sida cordata</em> (Burm.) Borss.</td>
<td>Malvaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Stachytarpheta</em> cayennensis (Rich.) Vahl.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of plants</td>
<td>Family</td>
<td>Part used</td>
<td>Mode of uses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tagetes patula L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toona ciliate Roem.</td>
<td>Meliaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.18: Plants used in measles, ringworm and other skin diseases by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Rumex nepalensis</em> Spreng.</td>
<td>Polygonaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Solanum anguivi</em> Lam.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Spondias pinnata</em> Kurz.</td>
<td>Anacardiaceae</td>
<td>Bark / seeds</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Tagetes patula</em> L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Toona ciliata</em> Roem.</td>
<td>Meliaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Vitex trifolia</em> L.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.19: Plants used in tonsilitis, throat and mouth infections by the *Kabui* and *Monsang* Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Cinamomum tamala</em> Nees</td>
<td>Lauraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Elsholtzia communis</em> (Coll. &amp; Hemsl.) Diels.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves / Flowers</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Elsholtzia stachyodes</em> (Link.) Raizada &amp; Saxena</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves / Flowers</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Solanum melongina</em> L.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Smoke</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.20: Plants used in abortion by the *Kabui* and *Monsang* Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Hibiscus rosa-sinensis</em></td>
<td>Malvaceae</td>
<td>Flowers</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hibiscus schizopetalous</em> (Boulger) Hook.</td>
<td>Malvaceae</td>
<td>Flowers</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Aegle marmelose</em> (L.) Corr.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Datura metals</em> L.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ananas comosus</em> (L.) Merr.</td>
<td>Bromeliaceae</td>
<td>Unriped fruits</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nerium indicum</em> Mill.</td>
<td>Apocynaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.21: Plants used in cholera by the *Kabui* and *Monsang* Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Allium ascalonicum</em> L.</td>
<td>Lilliaceae</td>
<td>Bulbs</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Allium cepa</em> L.</td>
<td>Lilliaceae</td>
<td>Bulbs</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Andrographis paniculata</em> Nees</td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nilumbo nucifera</em> Gaertn.</td>
<td>Nymphaeaceae</td>
<td>Flowers</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.22: Plants used in tumor by the *Kabui* and *Monsang* Naga tribes.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alocasia macrorrhiza</td>
<td>Araceae</td>
<td>Petiole</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colocasia esculenta</td>
<td>Araceae</td>
<td>Petiole</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicotina tobacum</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piper betle</td>
<td>Piperaceae</td>
<td>Petiole</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.23: Plants used in constipation by the *Kabui* and *Monsang* Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aegle marmelos (L.) Corr.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centella asiatica Urban</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
<td>Boiled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrus jambhiri Lush.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hibiscus cannabinus L.</td>
<td>Malvaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lantana carama L.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosa indica L.</td>
<td>Rosaceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rubus ellipticus Smith.</td>
<td>Rosaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saccharum officinarum L.</td>
<td>Poaceae</td>
<td>Stem</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.24: Plants used in leprosy by the *Kabui* and *Monsang* Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lygodium flexuosun (L.) Sw.</td>
<td>Lygodiaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luffa acutangula (L.) Roxb.</td>
<td>Cucurbitaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.25: Plants used in paralysis by the *Kabui* and the *Monsang* Tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Premna bengalensis CB.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clarke</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.26: Plants used in malaria by the *Kabui* and and *Monsang* Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tinospora cordifolia</td>
<td>Menispermaceae</td>
<td>Leaves/Stem</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hook. f. &amp; thomson</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4.2.27: Plants used in vomiting by the Kabui and the Monsang Tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Averrhoa carambola L.</td>
<td>Averrhoaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coriandrum sativum L.</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zizipus jujube Lam.</td>
<td>Rhamnaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tinospora cordofolia (Willd.) Hook.f. &amp; Thomson</td>
<td>Menispermaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.28: Plants used in child birth and for the mothers by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Achyranthus aspera L.</td>
<td>Amaranthaceae</td>
<td>Roots</td>
<td>Powder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colocasia gigantia (Blume) Hook.</td>
<td>Araceae</td>
<td>Petiole</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goniothalamus sesquipedalis Hook.</td>
<td>Annonaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Smoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leucus asoera Link.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mimosa pudica L.</td>
<td>Mimosaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phyla nodiflora (L.) Greene</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psidium guajava L.</td>
<td>Myrtaceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solanum nigrum L.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Boiled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cida cordata (Burm) Bors.</td>
<td>Malvaceae</td>
<td>Leaves / Root</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.29: Plants used in burn by the Kabui and the Monsang Tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aloe barbadensis Mill.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cacia concinna Wall.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrus medica L.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Boiled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dioscorea alata L.</td>
<td>Dioscoreaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Boiled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dioscorea bulbifera L.</td>
<td>Dioscoreaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Boiled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meyna spinosa Rohns.</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Warmed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solanum tuberosum L.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Tubers</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.30: Plants used as antidote by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phlogacanthus thyrsiformis (Hardwick) Mabber.</td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Leaves / Flowers</td>
<td>Fresh /cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of plants</td>
<td>Family</td>
<td>Part used</td>
<td>Mode of uses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zingiber officinale DC.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Fresh/ cooked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.31: Plants used in epilepsy by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nerium indicum Mill.</td>
<td>Apocynaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Powder</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.32: Plants used in corn by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Asclepias curassavica L.</td>
<td>Asclepiadaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Latex</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.33: Plants used in nail infection by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Impatiens balsamina L.</td>
<td>Balsaminna</td>
<td>Leaves / flowers</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.34: Plants used to cure sexual impotency by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bombax ceiba L.</td>
<td>Bombacaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clitoria ternatea L.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Leaves/ stem/ root</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.35: Plants used as appetizer by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Polygonum posumbu Buch-Ham. ex D.Don.</td>
<td>Polygonaceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lysimachia parviflora Baker</td>
<td>Primulaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Houttuynia cordata Thunb.</td>
<td>Saururaceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cissus adnata Roxb.</td>
<td>Vitaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ficus tjakela Burm.</td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perilla frutescens (L.) Britt.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Seeds</td>
<td>Fried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menthe spucata L.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ocimum americanum L.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4.2.36: Plants used in rheumatism by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acorus calamus L.</td>
<td>Araceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allium sativum L.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Bulbs</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpinia galanga Willd.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpinia officinarum Hance</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ardisia colorata Roxb.</td>
<td>Myrsinaceae</td>
<td>Roots</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Azadirachta indica A. Juss.</td>
<td>Meliaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cuscuta reflexa Roxb.</td>
<td>Convolvulaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eryngium foetidum L.</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holmskioldia sanguinea Retz.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mikania micrantha Kunth.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Boiled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oroxylum indicum Vent.</td>
<td>Bignonaceae</td>
<td>Leaves / root</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Premna herbacea Roxb.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Roots</td>
<td>Fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitex trifolia L.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.37: Plants used to expel intestinal worm by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acmella paniculata (Wall. ex DC.) R.K. Jansen</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpinia galanga Willd.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coriandrum sativum L.</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curcuma aromatica Salisb.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curcuma Montana Rosc.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Momordica charantia L.</td>
<td>Cucurbitaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mussaenda glabra Vahl.</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.38: Plants used as nacrotics by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nicotiana tabacum L.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Dried</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.39: Plants used as antibiotic (A)/insecticide (I) by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acorus calamus L.</td>
<td>Araceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Paste (A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis paniculata Nees</td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Decoction (A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of plants</td>
<td>Family</td>
<td>Part used</td>
<td>Mode of use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Artemisia nilagirica</em> (CB.Clarke) Pump.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste (A, I)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Azadirachta indica</em> A. Juss.</td>
<td>Meliaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste (A, I)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Curcuma aromatica</em> Salisb.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Juice (A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Curcuma montana</em> Rosc.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Juice (A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cyperus rotundus</em> (L.) Pers.</td>
<td>Cyperaceae</td>
<td>Tuber</td>
<td>Juice (A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Duranta repens</em> L.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Paste (I)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eclipta prostrata</em> L.</td>
<td>Apliaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Paste (A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eryngium foetidum</em> L.</td>
<td>Apliaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice (A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eupatorium cannabinum</em> L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice (A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Goniothalamus sesquipedalis</em> Hook. f.&amp; Thomson</td>
<td>Annonaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Smoke (A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Isodon ternifolius</em> Kudo.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Flowers</td>
<td>Smoke (A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Justicia adhatoda</em> L.</td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Leaves/Flowers</td>
<td>(A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lantana camara</em> L.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste (I)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Michelia champaca</em> L.</td>
<td>Magnoliaceae</td>
<td>Bark</td>
<td>Decoction (A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nicotina tabacum</em> L.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste (I)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nyctanthes arboritris</em> L.</td>
<td>Oliaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction (A, I)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ocimum tenuiflorum</em> L.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Juice (A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Oroxyllum indicum</em> Vent.</td>
<td>Bignonaceae</td>
<td>Fruit/Leaves/Bark/Root</td>
<td>Decoction(A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Phlogacanthus curviflorus</em> Nees</td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction (A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Phlogacanthus thyrsifloris</em> (Hardwick) Mabber.</td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Leaves/Flowers</td>
<td>Fresh/Cooked (A, I)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Plumbago zeylanica</em> L.</td>
<td>Plumbaginaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste (A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Sida cordata</em> (Burm.) Borss.</td>
<td>Malvaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Decoction (A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Solanum anguivi</em> Lam.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Fresh (A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Tagetes patula</em> L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste (I)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Toona ciliata</em> M. Roem.</td>
<td>Meliaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste (I)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Vitex trifolia</em> L.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste (A, I)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Xylosma longifolium</em> Clos.</td>
<td>Flacoutiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Decoction (I)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.40: Medicinal plants used in snake/insect bite by the *Kabui* and *Monsang* Naga tribes.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Clitoria ternatea</em> L.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Luffa acutangula</em> (L.) Roxb.</td>
<td>Cucurbitaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Oryza sativa</em> L.</td>
<td>Poaceae</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>Paste</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.41: Plants used as insect repellent by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Citrus aurantium</em> L.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Fruit skin</td>
<td>Burn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Citrus jambhiri</em> Lush.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Fruit skin</td>
<td>Burn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Citrus maxima</em> (Burn.) Merr.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Fruit skin</td>
<td>Burn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gardenia jasminoides</em> Ellis.</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Flower</td>
<td>Smell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Michelia champaca</em> L.</td>
<td>Magnoliaceae</td>
<td>Flowers</td>
<td>Smell</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.42: Plants used in veterinary by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Mode of uses/Diseases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Allium sativum</em> L.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Bulb</td>
<td>Paste in fracture of chicken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Arundo donax</em> L.</td>
<td>Poaceae</td>
<td>Leaf</td>
<td>Mouth infaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Calotropis gigantia</em> (L.) W.T. Aiton</td>
<td>Asclepiadaceae</td>
<td>Leaf</td>
<td>Paste in cow skin diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cassia fistula</em> L.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Leaf/pod</td>
<td>Fresh in indigestion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Chenopodium album</em> L.</td>
<td>Chenopodiaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Fresh in sore of cattle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eclipta prostrata</em> L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Paste in skin diseases of animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nicotina tabacum</em> L.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Extract to expel leeches of cow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.43: Plants used in socioreligious purpose by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Tribes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Acorus calamus</em> L.</td>
<td>Araceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Kabui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Canarium bengalense</em> Roxb.</td>
<td>Burseraceae</td>
<td>Latex</td>
<td>Kabui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Curcuma domestica</em> Val.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Both tribes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Erythrina arborscens</em> Roxb.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Stem</td>
<td>Kabui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eupatorium cannabinum</em> L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Whole Shoots</td>
<td>Kabui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Goniothalamus sesquipedalis</em> Hook.f.&amp; Thomson.</td>
<td>Annonaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Smoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Isodon ternifolius</em> Kudo.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Flowers</td>
<td>Smoke</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 4.2.44: Plants used as hair-lotion by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abrus precatorius L.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acacia concinna DC.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Leaves &amp; fruits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ageratum conyzoides L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ajuga macroserma Wall. ex Benth.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anisomeles indica Kuntze</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artemisia nilagirica (Clarke)</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centella asiatica (L.) Urban</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrus jambhiri Lush.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crassocephalum crepidioides S. Moore</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dillenia indica L.</td>
<td>Dilleniaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hibiscus rosa-sinensis L.</td>
<td>Malvaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hibiscus schizopetalous (Boulger) Hook.</td>
<td>Malvaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malvaviscus arboreus Cav.</td>
<td>Malvaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meyna spinosa Rohyns.</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microtoena patchoulí (Clarke ex Hook.) Wu &amp; Hsuan</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mussaenda glabra Vahl.</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oryza sativa L.</td>
<td>Poaceae</td>
<td>Seeds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perilla frutescens (L.) Britt.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phyllanthus emblica L.</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pinus kesiya Royle</td>
<td>Pinaceae</td>
<td>Wood-eyes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plantago erosa Wall.</td>
<td>Plantaginaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pogostemon cablin Benth.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portulaca oleracea L.</td>
<td>Portulacaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purnus persica Batsch.</td>
<td>Rasaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhus semialata Murr.</td>
<td>Anacardiaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ricinus communis L.</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sapindus marginatus Vahl.</td>
<td>Sapindaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sesamum orientale L.</td>
<td>Pedaliaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tectona grandis L.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitex trifolia L.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Musa paradisiaca L. Musaceae Whole plant Both tribes
Ocimum tenuiflorum L. Lamiaceae Whole plant Kabui
Oryza sativa L. Poaceae Seeds Both tribes
Sida cordata (Burm.) Borss. Malvaceae Branches Kabui
Toona ciliata Roem. Meliaceae Whole plant Monsang
Vigna urguiculata (L.) Walp. Fabaceae Fruits Monsang
Zingiber officinale Rosc. Zingiberaceae Rhizome Kabui
Holmskioldia sanguinea Retz. Verbenaceae Flowers Kabui

Table 4.2.44: Plants used as hair-lotion by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.
Table 4.2.45: Plants used as dye by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Colours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Bixa orellana</em> L.</td>
<td>Bixaceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td>Saphron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hibiscus schizopetalous</em> (Boulger) Hook</td>
<td>Malvaceae</td>
<td>Flower</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mahonia manipuresis</em> Takeda</td>
<td>Berberidaceae</td>
<td>Stem/ flower</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mallotus philippensis</em> (Lam.) Mull.</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td>Saphron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Musa paradisiaca</em> L.</td>
<td>Musaceae</td>
<td>Juice</td>
<td>Black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Parkia timoriana</em> Meer.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Bark/ fruit</td>
<td>Black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Pasania pachyphylla</em> Schot.</td>
<td>Fagaceae</td>
<td>Bark</td>
<td>Black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Pasania spicata</em> Oerst.</td>
<td>Fagaceae</td>
<td>Bark</td>
<td>Black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Punica granatum</em> L.</td>
<td>Punicaceae</td>
<td>Fruit cover</td>
<td>Black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Strobilanthes cusia</em> (Nees) Kuntze</td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Black</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.46: Plants used as fish-poison by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Datura metal</em> L.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eupatorium odoratum</em> L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Juglans reja</em> L.</td>
<td>Juglandaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mikania micrantha</em> Kunth.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Millettia pachycarpa</em> Benth.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.47: Plants used as vegetables by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Alpinia galanga</em> Willd.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Alpinia nigra</em> (Gaertn.) Burtt.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Antidesma acidus</em> Retz.</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ardisia colorata</em> Roxb.</td>
<td>Myrsinaceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Artemisia nilagirica</em> (Clarke) Pump.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Bidens pilosa</em> L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Name</td>
<td>Family</td>
<td>Part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bombax ceiba L.</td>
<td>Bombacaceae</td>
<td>Flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brassica compestris L.</td>
<td>Brassicaceae</td>
<td>Leaves &amp; flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brassica juncea (L.) Czern.</td>
<td>Brassicaceae</td>
<td>Leaves &amp; flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calamus floribundus Griff.</td>
<td>Palmae</td>
<td>Tender leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camellia sinensis (L.) Kuntze</td>
<td>Ternstroemiaceae (Theaceae)</td>
<td>Tender leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Casia laevigata Wild.</td>
<td>Ceasalpinaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centella asiatica (L.) Urban.</td>
<td>Apaeaceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceratopteris thalictroides (L.) Brongn.</td>
<td>Parkeriaceae</td>
<td>Young leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cissus adnata Roxb.</td>
<td>Vitaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cissus Discolor Roxb.</td>
<td>Vitaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrus macropera Mont.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clerodendrum colebrokianum Walp.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clerodendrum serratum Spreng.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Shoots &amp; Inflorescence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colocacasia esculenta (L.) Schott.</td>
<td>Araceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crotalaria juncea L.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curcuma anguistifolia Roxb.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cycus pectinata Criff.</td>
<td>Cycadaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dichrocephala integrifolia Kuntze</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dioscoria bulbifera L.</td>
<td>Dioscoriaceae</td>
<td>Bulbil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elettaria cardamomum Maton</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Euphorbia hirta L.</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eurya acuminata DC.</td>
<td>Theaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Euryale ferox Salisb.</td>
<td>Nymphaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ficus glomerata Roxb.</td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ficus palmata Forsk.</td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gnaphaliun luteo-album L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves &amp; tendres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hibiscus cannabinus L.</td>
<td>Malvaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hibiscus sabdariffa L.</td>
<td>Malvaceae</td>
<td>Leaves &amp; flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Houttuynia cordata Thumb.</td>
<td>Saururaceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Justisia adhatoda L.</td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Leaves &amp; flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laucaena glauca (L.) Benth.</td>
<td>Mimosaceae</td>
<td>Fruit &amp; seeds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leucas aspera Link.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Litsia cubea (Lour.) Pers.</td>
<td>Lauraceae</td>
<td>Flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manihot esculenta DC.</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves &amp; tuber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mentha spicata L.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Stoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musa paradisiaca L.</td>
<td>Musaceae</td>
<td>Pseudostem &amp; inflorescence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neptunia prostrata Bail.</td>
<td>Mimosaceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nymphaea stellata Willd.</td>
<td>Nymphaeaceae</td>
<td>Stalk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxyxylum indicum Vent.</td>
<td>Bignonaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxalis corniculata L.</td>
<td>Oxalidaceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parkia javanica Merr.</td>
<td>Mimosaceae</td>
<td>Leaves &amp; fruits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passiflora edulis Sims.</td>
<td>Passifloraceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phlogacanthus thyrsiformis (Hardwick)</td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Shoots &amp; flowers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

302
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phlogocanthus tubiflorus Nees</td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pimpinella sp.</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves &amp; flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pimpinella hastate C.B.Clarke</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Above ground parts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plantago erosa Wall.</td>
<td>Plantaginaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plumbago auriculata Lamk.</td>
<td>Plumbaginaceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polybonum perfoliatum L.</td>
<td>Polygonaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polygonum barbetum L.</td>
<td>Polygonaceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polygonum capitatum L.</td>
<td>Polygonaceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psophocarpus tetragonolobus (L.) DC.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhus semilata Murr.</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Shoots &amp; flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rumex nepalensis Spreng.</td>
<td>Polygonaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schima wallichii (DC.) Korthals.</td>
<td>Theaceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sesbania sesban (L.) Merr.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Shoots &amp; fruits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solanum anguivi Lam.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solanum torvum Swartz.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sonchus wightianus DC.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stellaria media (L.) Vill.</td>
<td>Caryophyllaceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetragastrum bractiolatum Planch.</td>
<td>Vitaceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trapa natans L.</td>
<td>Trapaceae</td>
<td>Stolon &amp; leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urtica parviflora Roxb.</td>
<td>Uricaceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanguria spinosa Hook.</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vicia tetrasperma Moench.</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wendlandia glabrata DC.</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Inflorescence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zizania latifolia (Griseb.) Stapf.</td>
<td>Poaceae</td>
<td>Infected flowers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.48: Plants used as edible fruits by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.
Table 4.2.49: Wild edible plants used by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Citrus maxima (Burn.) Murr.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrus medica L.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dillenia indica L.</td>
<td>Dilleniaceae</td>
<td>Fruit &amp; medicine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Docynia indica (Colebr.) Decne.</td>
<td>Rosaceae</td>
<td>Fruit &amp; pickle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elaeocarpus floribundus Blume.</td>
<td>Elaeocarpaceae</td>
<td>Fruit &amp; curry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ficus cunea Duch-Han.</td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ficus glomerata Roxb.</td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Fruit &amp; vegetable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ficus hispida L.</td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Fruit &amp; vegetable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flacourtia jangomas (Lour.) Racusch.</td>
<td>Flacouriaceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garcinia indica Choisy</td>
<td>Clusiaceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garcinia xanthochymus Hook.</td>
<td>Clusiaceae</td>
<td>Fruit, medicine &amp; curry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Juglans reijia L.</td>
<td>Juglindaceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mangifera foetida Lour.</td>
<td>Anacardiaceae</td>
<td>Fruit &amp; medicine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mangifera indica L.</td>
<td>Anacardiaceae</td>
<td>Fruit, Pickle &amp; vegetable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meyna spinosa Rohyns.</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Fruit &amp; lotion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musa paradisiaca L.</td>
<td>Musaceae</td>
<td>Fruit, medicine &amp; vegetable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myrca farquhariana Wall.</td>
<td>Myricaceae</td>
<td>Fruit &amp; wine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passiflora edulis Sims.</td>
<td>Passifloraceae</td>
<td>Fruit &amp; medicine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phoenix sylvestris (L.) Roxb.</td>
<td>Arecaceae</td>
<td>Fruit &amp; medicine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phylanthus acidus Skeels</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phylanthus emblica L.</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Fruit, medicine &amp; pickle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prunus armeniaca L.</td>
<td>Rosaceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prunus domestica L.</td>
<td>Rosaceae</td>
<td>Fruit &amp; wine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prunus persica (L.) Batsch</td>
<td>Rosaceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psidium guajava L.</td>
<td>Myraceae</td>
<td>Fruit &amp; wine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Punica granatum L.</td>
<td>Punicaceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyrus communis L.</td>
<td>Rosaceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyrus pashia Buch-Ham.</td>
<td>Rosaceae</td>
<td>Medicine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhus javanica L.</td>
<td>Anacardiaceae</td>
<td>Fruit &amp; medicine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rubus ellipticus Smith.</td>
<td>Rosaceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sapindus marginatus Vahl.</td>
<td>Sapindaceae</td>
<td>Fruit &amp; medicine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spondias pinnata (L.) Kurz.</td>
<td>Anacardiaceae</td>
<td>Fruit, Curry &amp; pickle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tamarindus indica L.</td>
<td>Caesalpinaceae</td>
<td>Fruit, Medicine, pickle &amp; curry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetrastigma bracteolatum Planch.</td>
<td>Vitaceae</td>
<td>Fruit &amp; curry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Alpinia officinarum</strong> Hance</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Medicine &amp; spices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amaranthus viridis</strong> L.</td>
<td>Amaranthaceae</td>
<td>Leaves &amp; shoots</td>
<td>Vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antidesma acidum</strong> Retz.</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Medicine &amp; vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Antidesma bunius</strong> Spreng.</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Fruits &amp; tenders</td>
<td>Fruit &amp; vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Arundo donax</strong> L.</td>
<td>Poaceae</td>
<td>Tender</td>
<td>Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Averrhoa corambola</strong> L.</td>
<td>Averrhoaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Azadirachta indica</strong> A. Juss.</td>
<td>Meliaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bauhinia variegata</strong> L.</td>
<td>Caesalpinaceae</td>
<td>Flowers</td>
<td>Vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bidens pilosa</strong> L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
<td>Vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bombax ceiba</strong> L.</td>
<td>Bombacaceae</td>
<td>Flowers</td>
<td>Vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Brassica oleracea</strong> (Wall.) R.N.Banerjee</td>
<td>Araliaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Calamus floribudus</strong> Griff.</td>
<td>Palmae</td>
<td>Fruits &amp; tenders</td>
<td>Fruit-Fruit Tender-vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Centella asiatica</strong> (L.) Urban</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Medicine &amp; vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chenopodium album</strong> L.</td>
<td>Chenopodiaceae</td>
<td>Young shoots</td>
<td>Vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cinamomum tamala</strong> Nees</td>
<td>Lauraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Spices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cinamomum verum</strong> J. Presl.</td>
<td>Lauraceae</td>
<td>Bark</td>
<td>Spices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cissus adnata</strong> Roxb.</td>
<td>Vitaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Medicine &amp; vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cissus discolor</strong> Blume</td>
<td>Vitaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Medicine &amp; vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Clerodendrum colebrookianum</strong> Walp.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
<td>Medicine &amp; vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Clerodendrum indicum</strong> (L.) Kuntze</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Clerodendrum kaemfere</strong> (Jaeq.) Siebold</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
<td>Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Clerodendrum serretum</strong> Spreng.</td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Shoot &amp; flowers</td>
<td>Medicine &amp; vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Crassocephalum crepidioides</strong> S.Moore</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Crotalaria juncea</strong> L.</td>
<td>Papilionaceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
<td>Vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Curcuma angustifolia</strong> Roxb.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Flowers</td>
<td>Spices &amp; vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cycas pacticata</strong> L.</td>
<td>Cycadaceae</td>
<td>Laeves</td>
<td>Vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cynodon dactylon</strong> (L.) Pir.</td>
<td>Poaceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
<td>Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dillenia indica</strong> L.</td>
<td>Dilleniaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Medicine &amp; fruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Eclipta prostrata</strong> L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Eryngium foetidum</strong> L.</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Medicine and spices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Eupatorium cannabinum</strong> L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ficus cunea</strong> Buch-Ham.</td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plant Name</td>
<td>Family</td>
<td>Parts Used</td>
<td>Uses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ficus glomerata</em> Roxb.</td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Fruits &amp; Shoots</td>
<td>Fruit-fruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ficus hispida</em> L.</td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ficus palmata</em> Forsk.</td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ficus tjakela</em> Burm.</td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td>Vegetable &amp; medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gnaphalium luteo-album</em> L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
<td>Vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hedychium coronarium</em> Koining</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Spices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hedychium marginatum</em> CB. Clark</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ipomoea aquatica</em> Forst</td>
<td>Convolvulaceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
<td>Vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Juglans rejia</em> L.</td>
<td>Juglandaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Justicia adhatoda</em> L.</td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Leaves &amp; flowers</td>
<td>Medicine &amp; vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lagenaria sinceraria</em> (Molina) Standl.</td>
<td>Cucurbitaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Leucus aspera</em> Spreng</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
<td>Medicine &amp; vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Meyna spinosa</em> Rohyns.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Fruit &amp; leaves</td>
<td>Fruits-fruit Leaves-Vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Michelia champaca</em> L.</td>
<td>Magnoliaceae</td>
<td>Leaves &amp; bark</td>
<td>Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mimosa pudica</em> L.</td>
<td>Mimosaceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
<td>Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mussaenda glabra</em> Vahl.</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Oenanthe javanica</em> DC.</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Above ground parts</td>
<td>Vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Oroxylum indicum</em> Vent.</td>
<td>Bignoliaceae</td>
<td>Fruit &amp; bark</td>
<td>Medicine &amp; vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Oxalis corniculata</em> L.</td>
<td>Oxalidaceae</td>
<td>Whole bark</td>
<td>Medicine &amp; vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Phlogacanthus thyrsiformis</em> (Hardwick) Mabber.</td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Leaves &amp; flower</td>
<td>Medicine &amp; vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Phoenix sylvestris</em> (L.) Roxb.</td>
<td>Aricaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Medicine &amp; fruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Phyllanthus acidus</em> Skeels</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Phyllanthus emblica</em> L.</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Medicine &amp; fruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Pimpinella hastata</em> C.B. Clarke</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Above ground parts</td>
<td>Medicine &amp; vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Pimpinella sp.</em></td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves &amp; flowers</td>
<td>Vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Plantago erosa</em> Wall.</td>
<td>Plantaginaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Medicine &amp; vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Plumbago zeylanica</em> L.</td>
<td>Plumbaginaceae</td>
<td>Whole plants</td>
<td>Medicine &amp; vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Polygonum barbatum</em> L.</td>
<td>Polygonaceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
<td>Vegetable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Polygonum capitatum</em> Buch-</td>
<td>Polygonaceae</td>
<td>Shoots</td>
<td>Vegetable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

306
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Type of uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Acorus calamus</em> L.</td>
<td>Araceae</td>
<td>Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Allium cepa</em> L.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Medicine, spices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Allium hookerii</em> L.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Medicine, Spices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Allium sativum</em> L.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Medicine, Socioreligious, spices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Allium tuberosum</em> Roxb.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Medicine, spices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Allium ascalonium</em> L.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Medical, spices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Allium chinense</em> G. Don</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Spices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Alocasia macrorrhiza</em> Schott.</td>
<td>Araceae</td>
<td>Fermented food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Alpinia officinarum</em> Hance</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Spices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Alpinia nigra</em> (Gaertn.) Burtt.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Vegetable, spices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of plants</td>
<td>Family</td>
<td>Part used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allium ascalonicum L.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allium cepe L.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allium chinense G. Don</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Bulb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allium hukerii L.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allium sativum L.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Bulb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allium tuberosum Roxb.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpinia nigra (Gaertn.) Burtt.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpinia galanga Willd.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpinia nigra (Gaertn.) Burtt.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome/young</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.51: Plants used as spices by the *Kabui* and *Monsang* Naga tribes.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Alpinia officinarum</em> Hance</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>petiole</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Capsicum annuum</em> L.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Capsicum chinense</em> Jacq.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cinamomum tamala</em> Nees &amp; Ebern.</td>
<td>Lauraceae</td>
<td>Leaf</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cinamomum verum</em> Prest.</td>
<td>Lauraceae</td>
<td>Bark</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Citrus macroptera</em> Mont.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Coriandrum sativum</em> L.</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cucurma angustifolia</em> Roxb.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Elettaria cardamomum</em> Maton</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Flower</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Elsholtzia blanda</em> Benth.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Tenders</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Elsholtzia communis</em> (Coll. &amp; Hemsl.) Diels</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Leaf &amp; flower</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Elsholtzia stachyodes</em> Raida &amp; Saxena</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Leaf &amp; flower</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eryngium foetidum</em> L.</td>
<td>Apiaceae</td>
<td>Leaf</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eurya acuminata</em> DC.</td>
<td>Theaceae</td>
<td>Leaf</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hedychium coronarium</em> Koening</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hedychium greenii</em> Smith.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hedychium spicatum</em> Buch-Ham.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Houttuynia cordata</em> Thunb.</td>
<td>Saururaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Litsea cubeba</em> Pers.</td>
<td>Lauraceae</td>
<td>Flower &amp; fruit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mentha spicata</em> L.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Tender</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Ocimum americanum* L.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Leaf &amp; flower</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Perilla frutescens</em> (L.) Britt.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Polygonum posumbu</em> Buch-Ham.</td>
<td>Polygonaceae</td>
<td>Tendre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Zanthoxylum acathopodium</em> DC.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Leaf &amp; fruit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Zanthoxylum americanum</em> Mill.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Zanthoxylum rhetsa</em> DC.</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Leaf</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Zingiber cassumunar</em> Roxb.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Zingiber officinale</em> Roxb.</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2.52: New reports on the uses of plants by the Kabui and Monsang Naga tribes of Manipur.
### Phytochemical Analysis

From the qualitative analysis of the present investigation, the presence or absence of alkaloids, flavonoids, tannins and saponins are confirmed. The absence of the elements are indicated by ‘-’, presence of trace amount of the elements are represented by ‘+’, presence of medium quantity is substituted by ‘++’ and larger quantity is shown by ‘+++’.
The Table 4.3.1 shows the results of phytochemical screening of some selected medicinal plants. The presence of highest concentration of alkaloids is observed in *Oroxylum indicum* and *Pavetta indica*, followed by *Cissus adnata* and *Hedychium greenii*. *Acmella paniculata, Cissus discolor, Clerodendrum colebrookianum, Curcuma angustifolia, Hedychium greenii* and *Zehneria scabra* which contained Alkaloids in trace amount. It is absent in *Pimpinella hastate* and *Zanthoxylum rhetsa*. *Oroxylum indicum* contains the highest amount of Flavonoid, followed by *Cissus adnata, Cissus discolor, Clerodendrum colebrookianum, Hedychium greenii, Pimpinella hastate* and *Zanthoxylum rhetsa*. Trace amount of flavonoid was found to be present in *Acmella paniculata, Curcuma angustifolia, Pavetta indica* and *Zehneria scabra*. While highest amount of saponins is found in *Litsea cubeba*, moderate amount was found in *Cissus adnata, Pavetta indica* and *Zanthoxylum rhetsa*. *Acmella paniculata, Curcuma angustifolia, Clerodendrum colebrookianum, Pimpinella hastate* and *Zehneria scabra* contains little amount of saponin. It was found to be absent in *Curcuma angustifolia* and *Oroxylum indicum*. Tannin is found to be present in all the selected plants in trace amount except *Litsea cubeba* and *Oroxylum indicum*. These two plants have shown concentration of tannins in moderate amount.

**Table 4.3.1: Results of phyto-chemical screening of Alkaloids, Flavonoids, Saponins and Tannins present in the test samples.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plants</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Alkaloids</th>
<th>Flavonoids</th>
<th>Saponins</th>
<th>Tannins</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Acmella paniculata</em> (Wall. ex DC.) R.K. Jansen</td>
<td>Shoot</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cissus adnata</em> Roxb.</td>
<td>Leaf</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cissus discolor</em> Blume</td>
<td>Leaf</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Clerodendrum colebrookianum</em> Walp.</td>
<td>Leaf</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 4.4. ANTIMICROBIAL ACTIVITY

In this present observation, various diameter of inhibition zones are exhibited by the plant extracts against these test organisms. In this experiment, largest diameter of 20.30 mm is shown by the extract of *Phlogacanthus thyrsiformis* against *Salmonella typh* (Plate-26-C-I). This extract shows 15.80 mm and 10.50 mm diameter of inhibition zone against *Klebseila pneumonia* and *Staphylococcus epidermidis* respectively (Plate-26-D-I & Plate-26-E-I). The inhibition zones of selected plant extracts against test organism are given in Table 4.54. *Andrographis paniculata* has 8.00 mm, 7.00 mm and 8.00 mm diameters of inhibition areas against *Salmonella typhi, Klebseila pneumonia* and *Staphylococcus epidermidis* respectively (Plate-26-C-II, Plate-26-D-II & Plate-26-E-II). *Vitex trifolia* shows diameters of 17.00 mm, 10.00 mm and 10.50 mm...
against *Salmonella typhi*, *Klebsiella pneumonia* and *Staphylococcus epidermidis* respectively (Plate-26-C-III, Plate-26-D-III & Plate-26-E-III). Diameters of 6.00 mm, 9.50 mm and 8.00 mm are shown by *Potentilla Canadensis* against *Salmonella typhi*, *Klebsiella pneumonia* and *Staphylococcus epidermidis* respectively (Plate-26-C-IV, Plate-26-D-IV & Plate-26-E-IV). *Artimisia nilagirica* has diameters of 10.00 mm, 12.00 mm and 12.50 mm against *Salmonella typhi*, *Klebsiella pneumonia* and *Staphylococcus epidermidis* respectively (Plate-26-C-V, Plate-26-D-V & Plate-26-F-V). But, there is no inhibition zone of all these plant extracts against *Bacillus subtilis* (Plate-26-F-I, II, IV & V and Table 4.4.1).

In this present observation, various diameter of inhibition zones are exhibited by the plant extracts against these test organisms as shown in Table 4.4.1. In this experiment, largest diameter of 20.30 mm is shown by the extract of *Phlogacanthus thyrsiformis* against *Salmonella typhi* (Plate-26-C-I). This extract shows 15.80 mm and 10.50 mm diameter of inhibition zone against *Klebsiella pneumonia* and *Staphylococcus epidermidis* respectively (Plate-26-D-I & Plate-26-E-I). The inhibition zones of selected plant extracts against test organisms are given in Table 4.4.1. *Andrographis paniculata* has 8.00 mm, 7.00 mm and 8.00 mm diameters of inhibition areas against *Salmonella typhi*, *Klebsiella pneumonia* and *Staphylococcus epidermidis* respectively (Plate-26-C-II, Plate-26-D-II & Plate-26-E-II). *Vitex trifolia* shows diameters of 17.00 mm, 10.00 mm and 10.50 mm against *Salmonella typhi*, *Klebsiella pneumonia* and *Staphylococcus epidermidis* respectively (Plate-26-C-III, Plate-26-D-III & Plate-26-E-III). Diameters of 6.00 mm, 9.50 mm and 8.00 mm are shown by *Potentilla Canadensis* against *Salmonella typhi*, *Klebsiella pneumonia* and *Staphylococcus epidermidis* respectively (Plate-26-C-IV, Plate-26-D-IV & Plate-26-E-IV). *Artimisia nilagirica* has diameters of 10.00 mm, 12.00 mm and 12.50 mm against *Salmonella typhi*, *Klebsiella pneumonia* and *Staphylococcus epidermidis* respectively (Plate-26-C-V, Plate-26-D-V & Plate-26-F-V). But, there is no inhibition zone of all these plant extracts against *Bacillus subtilis* (Plate-26-F-I, II, IV & V and Table 4.4.1).

These test organisms also have shown inhibition zones against the known antibiotics viz. Penicillin, Chloramphenol, Streptomycin and Tetracyclin.
It has been shown different sizes of diameters as given in Table-4.4.2. Penicillin shows 18.00 mm, 17.50 mm, 24.00 mm and 25.00 mm diameters of inhibition zones against *Salmonella typhi*, *Klebsiella pneumonia*, *Staphylococcus epidermedis* and *Bacillus subtilis* respectively. Chloramphenicol has diameters of 14.00 mm, 16.50 mm, 22.00 mm and 20.30 mm inhibition against *Salmonella typhi*, *Klebsiella pneumonia*, *Staphylococcus epidermedis* and *Bacillus subtilis* respectively. Diameters of 16.50 mm, 10.50 mm, 19.00 mm and 15.00 mm of inhibition areas are shown by Streptomycin against *Salmonella typhi*, *Klebsiella pneumonia*, *Staphylococcus epidermedis* and *Bacillus subtilis* respectively. Tetracyclcin exhibit 7.10 mm, 15.00 mm, 20.00 mm and 10.00 mm diameter of inhibition zones are shown against *Salmonella typhi*, *Klebsiella pneumonia*, *Staphylococcus epidermedis* and *Bacillus subtilis* respectively. Inhibition zones of known antibiotics eg. Penicillin, Chloramphenicol, Streptomycin and Tetracyclcin against *Staphylococcus epidermedis* and *Bacillus subtilis* are shown in Table 4.4.2, Plate 26-A-I, II, II & IV and Plate 26-B-I, II, II &IV respectively.

**Table 4.4.1:** Zone of inhibition formed against the test organisms by the discs containing medicinal plant extracts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sl. No.</th>
<th>Test organisms</th>
<th>Phlogacanthus thyrsiformis</th>
<th>Andrographis paniculata</th>
<th>Vitex trifolia</th>
<th>Potentilla canadensis</th>
<th>Artemisia nilagirica</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><em>Salmonella typhi</em></td>
<td>20.30</td>
<td>8.00</td>
<td>17.00</td>
<td>6.00</td>
<td>10.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><em>Klebsiella pneumonia</em></td>
<td>15.80</td>
<td>7.00</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>9.50</td>
<td>12.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><em>Staphylococcus epidermedis</em></td>
<td>10.50</td>
<td>8.00</td>
<td>10.50</td>
<td>8.00</td>
<td>12.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><em>Bacillus subtilis</em></td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 4.4.2:** Inhibition zones formed by known antibiotic (i.e. Penicillin, Chloramphenicol, Streptomycin and Tetracyclcin) discs against four human pathogens.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sl. No.</th>
<th>Test organisms</th>
<th>Penicillin</th>
<th>Chloramphenicol</th>
<th>Streptomycin</th>
<th>Tetracycline</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><em>Salmonella typhi</em></td>
<td>18.00</td>
<td>14.00</td>
<td>16.50</td>
<td>7.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Klebsiella pneumonia</strong></td>
<td>17.50</td>
<td>16.50</td>
<td>10.50</td>
<td>15.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><strong>Staphylococcus epidermedis</strong></td>
<td>24.00</td>
<td>22.00</td>
<td>19.00</td>
<td>20.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><strong>Bacillus subtilis</strong></td>
<td>25.00</td>
<td>20.30</td>
<td>15.00</td>
<td>10.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>